

RUSSIAN COURSE PHASE III

Student Workbook for Homework Assignments

MODULES I-IV
Lessons 1-22

September 1983

**DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER**

PREFACE

This workbook contains all of the directions and activities required for home study in Phase III. Each lesson has two assignments, designated as Homework I and Homework II.

Homework I consists of three sections: Semantics, Syntax, and a written assignment. Semantics requires the student to learn the new vocabulary and to review the Word Equivalents section of the Semantics component in the textbook. The Syntax portion addresses structural problem areas encountered by an American student of Russian. The written assignment requires a review of the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component in the textbook and usually consists of a sentence level translation from English to Russian. The activities in Homework I are reviewed and discussed during the first part of the Application component.

Homework II is designed to reinforce the ability to cope with aural and printed language stimuli in unstructured situations. The primary activities of translation (Russian to English), aural comprehension, textual restoration, and the preparation of oral reports are staggered so as to provide both variety and practice in all four skill areas. The table below reflects the activities addressed in each lesson.

ACTIVITY	LESSONS
Translation & Analysis	1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21
Aural Comprehension & Textual Restoration	2, 6, 10, 14, 18, 22
Aural Comprehension & Preparation of Oral Reports	4, 8, 12, 16, 20

The translation, Analysis, Aural Comprehension, and Textual Restoration activities are reviewed and discussed during the first part of the Reinforcement component. Oral reports are presented during the Comprehension and Communication component.

Grammar reference tables are presented as appendices.

RUSSIAN PHASE III: GRAMMAR THEMES IN HOMEWORK I

LESSON	TOPIC
1	Introduction to syntax; sentence types according to purpose; sentence types according to structure; impersonal sentences; impersonal and personal equivalents; elliptical sentences.
2	The principal parts of a sentence.
3	Irregularities in subject predicate agreement; special features of gender in nouns
4	Secondary parts of a sentence; objects.
5	Secondary parts of a sentence: attributes (of manner, place, time, purpose, cause); summary.
6	Word order in Russian; deviation from standard word order; introduction to the syntax of conversational Russian.
7	Verb aspects.
8	Tense: past, future, negated future.
9	Aspect and the infinitive and the imperative.
10	Meaning and prefixation; special meanings of prefixes; special meaning of going verbs.
11	Reflexive verbs; the hypothetical mood.
12	Peculiarities in the Russian verbal system; working aids.
13	Cardinal numerals; reference charts.
14	Ordinal numerals; compound numerical adjectives; numerical roots.
15	Fractions; decimals; fractional equivalents.
16	Collective numerals; numerical nouns.
17	Numerical adverbs; numerical expressions; special meaning of <u>один</u> .
18	Translating sentences with inverted word order; false clues to translation; nouns having multiple meanings; colloquial meanings.
19	Special constructions with <u>но</u> ; the effect of word stress on the case of nouns; words spelled alike; homonyms and other phonetic distracters.

LESSON

TOPIC

- 20 Diminutives; false diminutives; diminutive forms of adjectives and adverbs; direct objects after negated verbs.
- 21 Colloquialisms; colloquial expressions; name-calling.
- 22 Translating set expressions; colloquial expressions; abbreviations and acronyms.

CONTENTS

LESSON 1		
Homework I	. . . . .	1
Homework II	. . . . .	9
LESSON 2		
Homework I	. . . . .	17
Homework II	. . . . .	25
LESSON 3		
Homework I	. . . . .	29
Homework II	. . . . .	36
LESSON 4		
Homework I	. . . . .	41
Homework II	. . . . .	48
LESSON 5		
Homework I	. . . . .	51
Homework II	. . . . .	61
LESSON 6		
Homework I	. . . . .	65
Homework II	. . . . .	75
LESSON 7		
Homework I	. . . . .	79
Homework II	. . . . .	86
LESSON 8		
Homework I	. . . . .	91
Homework II	. . . . .	97
LESSON 9		
Homework I	. . . . .	99
Homework II	. . . . .	106
LESSON 10		
Homework I	. . . . .	110
Homework II	. . . . .	120

LESSON 11		
Homework I	. . . . .	124
Homework II	. . . . .	133
LESSON 12		
Homework I	. . . . .	138
Homework II	. . . . .	146
LESSON 13		
Homework I	. . . . .	149
Homework II	. . . . .	164
LESSON 14		
Homework I	. . . . .	168
Homework II	. . . . .	174
LESSON 15		
Homework I	. . . . .	178
Homework II	. . . . .	187
LESSON 16		
Homework I	. . . . .	192
Homework II	. . . . .	200
LESSON 17		
Homework I	. . . . .	202
Homework II	. . . . .	208
LESSON 18		
Homework I	. . . . .	213
Homework II	. . . . .	222
LESSON 19		
Homework I	. . . . .	225
Homework II	. . . . .	238
LESSON 20		
Homework I	. . . . .	242
Homework II	. . . . .	250
LESSON 21		
Homework I	. . . . .	253
Homework II	. . . . .	263
LESSON 22		
Homework I	. . . . .	268
Homework II	. . . . .	276
APPENDICES		279
Appendix A. Prepositions and Case Government	. . . . .	280
Appendix B. Verbs and Case Government	. . . . .	300
Appendix C. Complex Conjunctions	. . . . .	311

LESSON I

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. INTRODUCTION TO SYNTAX

Russian is a highly inflected language and requires a thorough knowledge of grammar in order to assure comprehension. In addition to knowing grammatical endings, an understanding of the syntactical makeup of an utterance is essential. For example:

Он сказал мне эту новость вчера.

- Он is in the nominative case because it is the subject of the sentence.
- Сказал is in the past tense because of the adverb вчера and ends in -л because being a predicate it must agree with the subject.
- Новость is in the accusative case because it functions as the direct object of the verb сказать.
- Эту is in the accusative case because it modifies новость and must therefore agree in case, number and gender.
- Мне is in the dative case because it is the indirect object.

The word syntax is used to describe the way in which words are put together to form phrases, clauses and sentences. A sentence is a grammatically self-contained unit which expresses a complete thought. The basic structural unit of a sentence is a clause. A clause is a group of words which contain a subject and a predicate. Clauses may be independent or dependent.

1. Independent Clauses

An independent clause is a group of words which can stand alone and express a complete thought. An independent clause may be declarative, interrogative or imperative:

Иван поехал в Москву.

Ivan went to Moscow.

(declarative)

Иван уже уехал?

Has Ivan left already?

(interrogative)

Иван, поезжай(те) в
Москву.

Ivan, go to Moscow.

(imperative)

2. Dependent Clauses

A dependent clause is a group of words that expands upon the main idea of the sentence. A dependent clause cannot stand alone as it does not express a complete thought.

Вы знаете девушку, кото-
рая была здесь?

Do you know the girl who was
here?

In this example, the first clause is independent (Вы знаете девушку); it can stand alone and expresses a complete thought. The second clause is dependent (которая была здесь); it does not express a complete thought but simply provides more information about the girl in question.

Sentences are classified according to purpose as declarative, interrogative, and imperative and according to structure as simple, compound and complex.

B. SENTENCE TYPES ACCORDING TO PURPOSE

1. Declarative Sentences

Declarative sentences impart information:

Я пишу письмо брату.

Я хочу пить.

Я с вами несогласен.

2. Interrogative Sentences

Interrogatives sentences request information

Что вы делаете?

Вы хотите пить?

Неужели вы со мной несогласны?

3. Imperative Sentences

Imperative sentences express commands, requests or invitations.

Позвоните мне завтра.

Дайте мне, пожалуйста, что-нибудь почитать.

Приходите к нам в гости.

C. SENTENCE TYPES ACCORDING TO STRUCTURE

Depending upon their structure, sentences are described as being simple, compound or complex.

1. Simple Sentences

A simple sentence is a complete thought expressed by one independent clause. A simple sentence may be declarative, interrogative or imperative.

Я вечером иду на вечеринку.	I'm going to a party tonight. (declarative)
Ты идешь в кино сегодня?	Are you going to the movies today? (interrogative)
Приходите к нам в шесть часов.	Come over at six o'clock. (imperative)

2. Compound Sentences

A compound sentence consists of two or more independent clauses, i.e. clauses which can stand alone and are grammatically independent of one another.

Германия напала на Польшу в 1939 году, и началась Вторая мировая война.	Germany attacked Poland in 1939 <u>and</u> World War II began.
---	--

NOTE: Unlike English, the subjects of two Russian independent clauses cannot be the same; If they are Russian considers the utterance a simple sentence.

Examples:

Compound sentence - Германия напала на Польшу, и началась Вторая мировая война.

(different subjects)

Simple sentence - Германия напала на Польшу и захватила почти всю её территорию.

(same subject)

3. Complex Sentences

A complex sentence consist of one independent clause and one or more dependent clauses. The subordinate (dependent) clauses qualify, limit, expand upon, or in some other way modify the idea stated in the main (independent) clause.

Examples

Main (Independent) Clause	Subordinate (Dependent) Clause
Я дал ему книги, мы торопились,	чтобы он их посмотрел. потому что было уже поздно.

D. IMPERSONAL SENTENCES

An impersonal sentence is one which has only a predicate and no grammatical subject. Such constructions often present considerable difficulty for the American student of Russian, since he tends to look for a subject and a predicate to grasp the basic meaning of an utterance. Unfortunately, these kinds of sentences are quite common in Russian.

The grammatical subject of a sentence is usually a noun, pronoun, numeral, adjectival noun or a participle (used as a noun) in the nominative case. Such subject cannot be found in impersonal sentences.

Examples:

У меня нет денег.	I have no money.
Вдруг стало темно.	All of a sudden it got dark.
Мне надо идти.	I have to go.
Его перевели в Берлин.	He was transferred to Berlin.
Ей нельзя курить.	She's not supposed to smoke.

Note that the English translations are often "personal"; that is, they have a grammatical subject. Nevertheless, these sentences are impersonal in Russian.

E. IMPERSONAL AND PERSONAL EQUIVALENTS

In Russian, one and the same idea can often be expressed either by a personal or impersonal sentence with no substantial difference in meaning.

Compare:

Personal Sentence	Impersonal Sentence
Небо темнеет. The sky is getting dark.	Уже темнеет. It's already getting dark.
Вода ка́пает с крыши. Water is dripping from the roof.	С крыши ка́пает. There's water dripping from the roof.
Лодку переверну́ла волна́. A wave overturned the boat.	Лодку переверну́ло волно́й. A wave overturned the boat.
(Nom. Pl.) Магази́ны закрыва́ются в 5.00.* The stores close at 5:00.	(Acc. Pl.) Магази́ны закрыва́ют в 5.00. The stores close at 5:00.
(Nom.Pl.) Эти сведения́ были пе́реданы по радио. This information was transmit- ted by radio.	(Acc.Pl.) Эти сведения́ переда́ли по радио. This information was transmitted by radio.

F. NOMINAL SENTENCES

A nominal sentence has a subject, but no predicate. Such sentences "name" objects or phenomena and state their existence without describing them in any way:

Тишина́.	(It's) quiet.
Двенадцать часов.	(It's) 12:00.

Nominal sentences can be:

1. affirmative: Темно́та. (It's) dark.
2. exclamatory: Пожа́р! Fire!
3. interrogative: Звоно́к? (Was that) the bell?

A nominal sentence states the existence of a given object or phenomenon. Thus, utterances such as доброе утро are not considered to be nominal sentences. A nominal sentence may only exist in the present tense. The only other part of the sentence which is normally present is an adjective.

ЗЕНИТНЫЙ ОГОНЬ. (There's) anti-aircraft fire (right now).

G. ELLIPTICAL SENTENCES

Elliptical sentences are those in which some part(s) of the sentence has (have) been omitted. The omitted element(s) can easily be identified from prior context (i.e. from the preceding sentence or sentences).

Consider the following examples of elliptical sentences. Note that in each instance the omitted ("understood") information is clearly identifiable by prior context:

- Я не умею это делать.
- Должны уметь. (Subject вы is understood.)
- Моя сестра живёт в Минске.
- А брат где? (Predicate живёт is understood.)

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. How long did it take him to inspect the factory?

2. The colonel introduced us to the new company commander.

3. The Soviet Union sent two representatives to the conference.

4. Last year she once again received a monetary award.

5. After the war he was awarded the Order of Lenin.

6. You can't imagine what happened to me yesterday.

7. She lived outside of America for a long time.

8. Everyone came to the reception on time except Tanya.

LESSON I

Homework II

Section One: Introduction to Translation with Lexical Aids

All too often, students tend to "overuse" the dictionary after learning how to use it. This means that they immediately reach for the dictionary when confronted with an unfamiliar lexical item, without trying to "figure it out" by analysing the context in which it appears.

Much time and effort can be saved by employing a device called "textual expectancy", similar to the approach taken in the Reading Comprehension section of each lesson of Phase II. For example, let's assume you don't know (or perhaps had forgotten) the word сыт. From the following passage, you should nevertheless be able to determine its meaning by the the context in which it appears:

- Ваня, ты хочешь ещё супа?
- Нет, спасибо. Я больше не хочу. Я сыт.

The more you develop the skill of textual guessing, the better you will understand spoken and written Russian. The dictionary then becomes more and more a device by which to check to see if you have guessed correctly.

In order to translate quickly and accurately from Russian into English, you must learn to:

- a) use the passage of written or spoken Russian to elicit a maximum of information;
- b) use the dictionary correctly;
- c) vary the structure, word order, etc. to render the passage in correct, free-flowing English.
- d) watch for cognates and words derived from familiar words.

Knowledge of dictionary usage, as outlined in Phase II is essential to translating quickly and accurately. However, you must also apply your grammatical and syntactical skills and observe certain basic guidelines when translating.

1. Steps to Approaching a Translation

- a) Try to determine the overall meaning of a workable segment (a paragraph, a sentence, etc.) by briefly scanning it for general meaning;
- b) Translate as much of the segment as you can without using your dictionary;
- c) Look up the unfamiliar words and select the best meaning as indicated by the context;
- d) Find the principal parts of the sentence(s) (subject and predicate) and make sure they agree grammatically;
- e) Locate the secondary parts of the sentence(s) (objects, attributes and/or adverbial modifiers) and check all grammatical agreement, such as case with prepositions, adjectives with nouns they modify, etc.
- f) Make your translation sound as natural and as free-flowing as possible in English without radically changing the meaning.¹

¹ In order to render the meaning of a passage of Russian into understandable and natural English, the translator must often change an active construction to passive (or vice versa), a verbal construction to a noun phrase, word order, etc., e.g.:

Этот перевод сделали с помощью технического словаря.
This translation was done by using a technical dictionary.

2. Suggestions for Avoiding Pitfalls in Translation

<u>DO's</u>	<u>DON'T's</u>
1. <u>Always</u> locate the subject and predicate, and ensure that they agree grammatically; then procede to the secondary parts.	1. <u>Never</u> translate "from left to right", since Russian word order often varies from that of English.
2. <u>Always</u> parse each sentence briefly to ensure that you are putting words together which indeed belong together. 3. <u>Always</u> scan each dictionary entry briefly, and compare the various meanings listed with the context of the passage you are translating.	2. <u>Never</u> assume that words "fit together", since this determination must be made on the basis of syntactical analysis. 3. <u>Never</u> simply select the first meaning listed for a word in the dictionary, but rather make sure that the meaning you select fits the context.
4. <u>Always</u> translate according to <u>context</u> . This will allow you to predict what a word might mean within the context and thus make your job easier.	4. <u>Never</u> translate "word for word", but rather translate the <u>meaning</u> as dictated by the overall context.

Section Two: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Организация Вооружённых Сил СССР

Высшим (3) руководством Советских Вооружённых Сил формально является Верховный (1) Совет (2) СССР. Однако, так как (4) сам Верховный (5) Совет (6) подчиняется (7) ЦК КПСС, то и вооружённые силы также подчинены (8) ЦК партии.

Непосредственное управление (10) Советскими Вооружёнными Силами осуществляет (9) Министр обороны СССР. За разработку (12) стратегических планов и выполнение (13) решений Высшего (14) Военного совета ответствен (11) Генеральный штаб.

Советские Вооружённые Силы состоят (15) из (16) следующих (17) пяти видов войск:

- Ракётные (18) войска стратегического назначения
- Сухопутные войска
- Военно-Воздушные (19) Силы (ВВС)
- Военно-Морской Флот (ВМФ)
- Войска противовоздушной обороны (20) страны (ПВО)
- Каждым видом вооружённых сил руководит (21) военный совет, председателем (22) которого является главнокомандующий, назначаемый (23) ЦК КПСС. Эти военные советы несут ответственность (24) за состояние (25) и боевую готовность (26) войск.

English Translation

The Organization of the Armed Forces of the USSR

Officially, the _____ (1) _____ (2) of the USSR is the _____ (3) authority over the Soviet Armed Forces. However, _____ (4) the _____ (5) _____ (6) itself is _____ (7) to the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union (CPSU), the armed forces are also _____ (8) to the Central Committee of the Party.

The Minister of Defense of the USSR _____ (9) direct _____ (10) over the Soviet Armed Forces. The General Staff is _____ (11) for _____ (12) strategic plans and for _____ (13) the decisions of the _____ (14) Military Council.

The Armed Forces of the USSR _____ (15) _____ (16) the _____ (17) five branches of service:

- Strategic _____ (18) Forces
- Ground Forces
- The _____ (19) Force
- The Navy
- _____ (20) Forces (PVO)

Each service is _____ (21) by a military council which is _____ (22) over by a Commander-in-Chief, _____ (23) by the Central Committee of the CPSU. These military councils bear the _____ (24) for the _____ (25) and combat _____ (26) of the troops.

Section Three: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. Высшим руководством Советских Вооружённых Сил формально является Верховный Совет СССР.
 - a) What case is высшим руководством in? Why?
 - b) What is the subject of the sentence.
 - c) How did you translate the word Совет? Why?

2. Однако, так как Верховный Совет починается ЦК КПСС, то и вооруженные силы также подчинены ЦК партии.
 - a) Explain the reflexive ending -ся on the verb in the first clause. What is its subject?
 - b) What part of speech is подчинены? Give the dictionary form under which you would find its meaning.
 - c) Explain the form of подчинены. With what does it agree?

3. Непосредственное управление Советскими Вооружёнными Силами осуществляет Министр обороны СССР.
- What is the subject of this sentence?
 - What can you say about the word order of this Russian sentence as compared to its English equivalent?
 - What case is the phrase непосредственное управление in? Why?
 - What case is the phrase Советскими Вооружёнными Силами in? Why?
4. За разработку стратегических планов и выполнение решений Высшего военного совета ответствен Генеральный штаб.
- What is the case of the noun разработка in this sentence? Why? Can you find a verb with the same root?
 - What is the case of the noun выполнение? Why?
 - What is the subject of this sentence?
 - Explain the form ответствен. What noun is this word derived from?
 - How does the word order differ from that of the English translation?
5. Каждым видом вооружённых сил руководит военный совет, председателем которого является главнокомандующий, назначаемый ЦК КПСС.
- What is the subject of the first clause? What is its predicate?
 - Explain the case of каждым видом.
 - Explain the derivation of the word главнокомандующий.
 - What part of speech is the word назначаемый? What word does it agree with? What form of this word appears in the dictionary?
 - If the abbreviation ЦК (Центральный Комитет) were to appear in its full form at the end of this sentence, what case would it be in? Why?

6. Эти военные советы несут ответственность за состояние и боевую готовность войск.
- a) What noun is the word ответственность derived from?
 - b) What verb did you see earlier in this article which is similar to the noun состояние?
 - c) What is the object(s) of the preposition за? What case does за take in this sentence? Why?
 - d) State the subject and predicate of this sentence.

LESSON II

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF A SENTENCE

The principal parts of a sentence are the subject and the predicate.

1. The Subject

The subject is grammatically independent of any other part of the sentence. The subject often denotes the performer of an action or the person, place or thing spoken about. The subject answers the questions КТО? (who) and ЧТО? (what).

Кто читает газету?

Капитан читает газету.

Что лежит на столе?

На столе лежит газета.¹

In Russian, the subject is usually identifiable as being a noun, pronoun, adjectival noun, participle, or numeral in the NOMINATIVE CASE.

Урок начинается.

Она пришла вóвремя.

Столовая находится на втором этаже.

Учащиеся много занимаются.

Там было шесть человек.

2. The Predicate

The predicate of a sentence is grammatically dependent on the subject. It defines the subject or expresses what the subject is (was, will be) doing.

subject		predicate	
<u>Он</u>	хорошо	<u>говорит</u>	по-русски.
3rd pers sing.		3rd pers sing.	

subject		predicate	
<u>Дети</u>		<u>бегали</u>	по полю.
3rd pers pl.		3rd pers pl.	

B. NUMERALS AND NUMERICAL CONSTRUCTIONS AS SUBJECTS

Numerals themselves, as well as certain constructions used with numerals, can be used as the subject of a sentence.

1. A Collective Numeral

Там было только <u>шестеро</u> .	Only 6 (people) were there.
----------------------------------	-----------------------------

2. An Ordinal Numeral

"Сокол!" Вас вызывает <u>20-ый</u> .	"Sokol", 20 is calling you. (radio transmission)
--------------------------------------	--

3. A Cardinal Numeral in the Nominative Case + a Noun in the Genitive

<u>Двадцать четыре солдата</u> вышли из грузовика и побежали в лес.	<u>24 soldiers</u> got out of the truck and ran into the woods.
---	---

4. Numerals which are in and of themselves nouns often appear as the subject of a sentence. The predicate will agree with the gender and number of these nouns.

Четверка доложила, что задание выполнено.
Там была только половина студентов.

C. VERBAL FORMS AS THE SUBJECT OF THE SENTENCE

1. A Participle Used as a Noun

When a participle is used as a noun it may serve as the subject of the sentence. In this function it will, of course, appear in the nominative case:

Начинающие много занимаются.

Beginners study a lot.

Сегодня к нам в часть приехал командующий округом.

The military district commander visited our regiment today.

Заклѳчѳнный хочет послать письмо.

The prisoner wants to mail a letter.

2. An Infinitive

Since Russian has no gerunds (verbal nouns ending in -ing), an infinitive can be used as the subject of a sentence. In these instances, the predicate agrees with the infinitive subject as if the subject were оно (neuter, singular):

Курить воспрещается.

Smoking is prohibited.

Ехать было уже поздно.

It was already too late to go.

Летать очень интересно.

Flying is fun.

D. THE PREDICATE

In Russian the predicate is usually expressed by a verb but may also be rendered by a participle, noun, or adjective.

1. Participles as Predicates

<u>Singular</u>			<u>Plural</u>	
subject		predicate		
<u>Экзамен</u>	уже	<u>проверен.</u>		
(masc. sing.)		(masc. sing.)		
subject		predicate	subject	
<u>Работа</u>	уже	<u>проверена.</u>	<u>Экзамены</u>	predicate
(fem. sing.)		(fem. sing.)	<u>Работы</u>	уже <u>проверены.</u>
			<u>Расписания</u>	plural
subject		predicate	plural	
<u>Расписание</u>	уже	<u>проверено.</u>		
(neuter sing.)		(neuter sing.)		

2. Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives

A noun when used as a predicate is called a predicate nominative and describes who the subject is, answering the questions КТО? (ОН, ОНА, ОНИ).

КТО он? Он доктор.

А вы кто? Я учитель.

An adjective when used as a predicate is called a predicate adjective and serves to further define the subject of the sentence as to its quality, state, or condition. The long form of an adjective can serve as either a modifier (Это длинная дорога) or as a predicate adjective (Эта дорога длинная). The short form is used only as a predicate adjective.

Этот человек богат.

Эта дорога очень длинная.

Predicate nominatives and predicate adjectives are most commonly used after the auxiliary "to be", which does not appear in present tense Russian sentences.

E. SIMPLE AND COMPOUND PREDICATES

A predicate may be simple or compound.

1. The Simple Predicate

The simple predicate of a sentence (or of each clause within a sentence) is a verb in the indicative, conditional or imperative mood:

Вчера я занимался три часа.

Мы будем отдыхать на юге.

Без твоей помощи я бы не подготовился к экзамену.

Если бы я побольше занимался, я бы сдал экзамен.
Conditional clause *Result clause*

Дайте мне этот карандаш.

2. The Compound Predicate

The compound predicate consists of two parts. It is classified as either verbal or nominal:

The Compound Verbal Predicate

The compound verbal predicate consists of an auxiliary form and an infinitive complement.

	<i>Auxiliary verb</i>	<i>Infinitive Complement</i>
Я	<u>хочу</u>	<u>пить</u> .

The auxiliary portion of a compound verbal preicate may be expressed by a verb, a short adjective or a phrase:

	<i>Auxiliary</i>	<i>Infinitive Complement</i>
Мы	<u>решили</u>	<u>встретиться</u> .
	<i>Aux.</i>	<i>Inf. Comp.</i>
Мы	<u>имели возможность</u>	<u>учиться</u> немецкому языку.
	<i>Aux.</i>	<i>Inf. Comp.</i>
Она	<u>готова</u>	тебе <u>помочь</u> .

The Compound Nominal Predicate

The compound nominal predicate consists of two parts: a linking verb and a nominal part. The "nominal" part may be expressed by: a noun, an adjective (long or short), a pronoun, a participle, an adverb or a numeral:

*Linking
verb* *noun*
Мой отец был солдатом.

l.v. *long adj.*
Ветер был сильный.

l.v. *participle*
Дверь была открыта.

l.v. *short adj.*
Будьте готовы к войне.

l.v. *pronoun*
Это была она.

l.v. *adverb*
Она была замужем.

l.v. *numeral*
Пять и пять будет десять.

Note that the most common linking verb in compound nominal predicates is БЫТЬ. Although БЫТЬ does not appear in the present tense, its presence as a linking verb is assumed.

Мой отец - врач.

Кто она?

Эта книга - моя.

However, when БЫТЬ is conjugated and used with the imperfective infinitive, the resulting construction is the imperfective future and is considered a simple predicate:

Он будет работать у нас с мая по июль.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. They did not wish to touch upon that question.

2. The partisans showed great resistance.

3. Everyone must act in accordance with the law.

4. Science has made great strides in this area.

5. He completed a considerable part of the task in a very short time.

6. She was expelled from the party for breaking party discipline.

7. He backed into the garage.

8. In spite of the doctor's advice, she went outside.

LESSON II

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension (On Tape)

A. SYLLABLE REDUCTION

Russians speak their native language at a speed which, for them, is quite normal. Unfortunately this rate of speech, produces utterances in which the syllables of longer words become "reduced", that is they are "shortened".

Listen to the following sentences as they are read aloud at normal conversational speed. Pay special attention to the underlined syllables:

1. Слышу вас удовлетворительно.
2. Вышло новое указание советского правительства.
3. По моему вы правильно поступаете.
4. Очевидно он не знал о собрании.
5. Это действительно замечательно.

Note that the underlined syllables are "reduced" and they may not be fully audible. When confronted with such situations, you should write down as much of it as you can, then try to determine (by context) the following information about the inaudible words(s):

1. What part of speech is it?
2. With what other words in the utterance does it agree (in grammatical form)?
3. What type of information does the inaudible word probably convey (i.e. is it the subject, predicate, object, attribute, adverbial modifier, etc.)?

B. SLURRING

As with syllable reduction, this problem arises when Russians are speaking their native language at normal conversational speed. Words tend to flow one into another and it is often difficult to determine when one word ends and another begins. Thus, two or more shorter words may sound like one long word as in the examples below. Listen to the following sentences as they are read aloud at normal conversational speed. Pay special attention to the underlined portions of each sentence:

1. Ему уже ехать надо.
2. Он живёт где-то около озера.
3. Сколько офицеров было отправлено туда?
4. Где командир второго отделения?
5. В будущем месяце приедет новый командир роты.

Clearly, such slurs often appear when one word ends with the same or similar sound (vowel or consonant) as the first sound of the next word. The best way to deal with this problem is to be aware that it exists and listen for it, especially when you write down a long word which you cannot find in a dictionary.

*Section Two: Exercises*Упражнение №1. Sentence Reconstruction Exercise

You will hear several sentences read aloud at normal conversational speed. Try to reconstruct each sentence by filling in the omitted words. (Note: Each blank represents a separate word.) You may use your dictionary for this exercise.

1. Туда поехало _____
второго батальона.
2. _____ стояло шесть солдат.
3. Я его _____ семи часов.
4. _____ задание,
лётчики вернулись на базу.

5. Если _____ сегодня,
передай _____ привет.
6. В _____ испол-
нится сорок лет.
7. _____ гаража, когда я
вас видел.
8. Меня интересует, _____ он то, что я
ему сказал.
9. _____ у него
машина.
10. Мы ехали со скоростью сто _____
_____ час.

Упражнение №2. Practice Dictation

You will hear 6 sentences read twice at normal conversa-
tional speed. There will be a 5 second pause between readings
and then a 20 second pause to write down each sentence.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

Section Three: Text Restoration

Restore the text using the words provided in the list below. The words are given in their dictionary forms and must be changed as required by the context. Each word may be used only once. There are extra words in the list. The restored text will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Красная _____ расположена _____
 Москвы. 1-го мая и 7-го ноября на _____ устраиваются демон-
 страции и военные _____, поскольку _____ большие
 советские _____. Здания _____
 флагами, лозунгами и _____ руководителей
 КПСС и _____ правительства. _____
 парадов - продемонстрировать военную _____ Советской
 _____. В это время _____ площади _____
 _____ как из
 социалистических, так и _____ капиталистических _____:
 послы, консулы, _____ атташе, корреспонденты,
 а также _____
 коммунистических _____.

в	армия	праздник	ехать
из	военный	советский	видеть
к	гость	страна	красить
на	иностранный	цель	присутствовать
с	картинка	центр	украшать
это	мощь		
	парад		
	партия		
	площадь		
	портрет		
	правительство		

LESSON III

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. IRREGULARITIES IN SUBJECT/PREDICATE AGREEMENT

1. Impersonal expressions with an "implied" subject in the Dative Case

Although impersonal sentences have no grammatical subject (nominative case), they often have an implied subject. This is rendered in Russian by the Dative case.

Examples:

Ему нельзя курить.

He's not supposed to smoke.

Мне здесь хорошо.

I feel comfortable here.

Ему стыдно.

He's ashamed.

Сколько вам лет?

How old are you?

Мне трудно писать по-русски.

I have difficulty writing Russian.

2. Expressions with an Infinitive

An infinitive can be used in place of a grammatical subject in impersonal sentences. It can also imply a kind of necessity or obligation, and is often used with an implied subject in the Dative case:

<u>Ехать</u> туда было поздно.	<u>It</u> was too late to go there.
<u>Летать</u> иногда опасно.	Flying can sometimes be dangerous.
<u>Кому</u> сегодня убирать?	Whose turn is it to clean up today?
Что <u>нам</u> делать?	What should we do?

3. Adverbs used as Predicates

Such sentences often contain an implied "it" which does not appear as a separate word in the Russian impersonal sentence.

Вчера было <u>холодно</u> .	<u>It</u> was cold yesterday.
Вчера было <u>теплее</u> , чем сегодня.	<u>It</u> was warmer yesterday than it is today.
Здесь <u>хорошо</u> .	<u>It's</u> nice hear.
Там было <u>много</u> людей.	<u>There were</u> many people there.
У Ивана в доме <u>тихо</u> и <u>спокойно</u> .	<u>It's</u> nice and quiet at Ivan's house.
В этом месте <u>глубоко</u> .	<u>It's</u> deep in this place (e.g. of a river).
<u>Пора</u> идти.	<u>It's</u> time to go.
С ним <u>легко</u> работать.	<u>It's</u> easy to work with him.
Там было <u>мало</u> воды.	<u>There was</u> little water there.

Note that the verbal forms in such sentences agree in their grammatical form with an implied "оно", i.e. they appear in the neuter singular.

4. Verbal Constructions in the 3rd Person Plural

Often the actor of a sentence is not specified. Such impersonal sentences employ a predicate in the 3rd person plural (as if they agree with some implied "они")

Здесь <u>говора́т</u> по-русски.	Russian is spoken here.
Его попроси <u>ли</u> прийти ве- чером.	He was asked to come in the evening.
Об этом уже забы <u>ли</u> .	That's already been forgotten.
Мне приказали <u>яв</u> и́ться в 9.00.	I was ordered to report at 0900.
Здесь <u>рабо́таю</u> т с 8-и до 5-и.	Working hours are 8:00-5:00.
Магазины (<u>Асс.</u>) <u>закрываю</u> т в 5 часов.	The stores close at 5:00.
Реши <u>ли</u> послать туда Ивана.	It was decided that Ivan will be sent there.

B. SPECIAL FEATURES OF GENDER IN NOUNS

1. Masculine Forms

Most Russian nouns have separate forms to indicate gender.

Он студент.	Она студентка.
Он учитель.	Она учительница.
Он немец	Она немка

There are a number of nouns in Russian denoting a person's profession, position or status which exist only in the masculine form. They have no corresponding feminine form, but can refer to women as well as men. Among these nouns you know the following:

адвокат - lawyer
врач - doctor, physician
директор - director
доктор - doctor
председатель - chairman, chairperson
прокурор - prosecutor, prosecuting attorney
профессор - professor
military ranks - сержант, лейтенант, капитан,
майор, etc.

Note that when these nouns refer to women, the predicate will be feminine:

Доктор уже пошла́ домой.

Прокурор еще не пришла́.

Thus, if you see a feminine form of a predicate, but the subject of the sentence is a masculine noun, you know that the speaker is referring to a woman.

NOTE: The noun человек means "person, human being" and thus refers to men and women. All grammatical forms are masculine:

Он хороши́й человек. Она хороши́й человек.

2. Feminine Forms

Some nouns are feminine in form but masculine in gender. Such nouns include:

дедушка - grandfather

дядя - uncle

мужчина - man, male person

старшина - first sergeant, master sergeant

All grammatical agreement with such nouns will be expressed by masculine forms:

Наш старшина поехал в отпуск.

Мой дядя долго работал инженером.

3. "Common Gender" Nouns

Some nouns have feminine endings but are "dual gender", i.e. they can refer to either gender (m. or f.). These nouns can be identified by the entry which immediately follows them in the dictionary: м. и ж. This abbreviation tells you that the noun is both masculine and feminine. Some of the more frequently used nouns in this category are:

жа́дина - miser, cheapskate, greedy person

злю́бка - malicious person

леви́ца - left-handed person

неве́жда - ignoramus, know-nothing

подли́за - groveler, brown-nose

пья́ница - drunk, drunkard, sot

сво́лочь - S.O.B., dirty swine

сирота́ - orphan

тихо́ня - meek, mild-mannered person

у́мница - smart person, clever person

With the exception of сволочь and умница, grammatical agreement will depend upon whether one is referring to a man or a woman.

Referring to a Man

Он такой тихо́ня.

Он еди́нственны́й левша́ в
в классе.

Он абсолю́тны́й неве́жда.

Referring to a Woman

Она такая тихо́ня.

Она еди́нственна́я левша в классе.

Она абсолю́тная неве́жда.

As noted, the nouns сволочь and умница are exceptions to this rule. Although they are "common gender nouns", all grammatical agreement with them must be expressed by feminine forms, even when referring to a man:

Он такая сволочь!

Он большая умница!

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. Be careful! You're being watched.

2. I am in no condition to go to the reception.

3. According to the law, everyone has equal rights.

4. At what age are Soviet young men summoned to the military registration office?

5. Do you have any personal property?

6. It is everyone's duty to fight for his country.

7. His knowledge of people has helped him in life.

8. The depth of this lake reaches 200 meters.

LESSON III

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

В Советском Союзе есть (1) пять видов (2) Вооружённых (3) Сил (4): Ракетные войска стратегического назначения, Сухопутные войска (5), Войска противовоздушной обороны (ПВО) (6) страны, Военно-Воздушные Силы (ВВС) (7), Военно-Морской Флот (ВМФ) (8), а также пограничные (9) и внутренние (10) войска (11). В свою очередь (12), виды (13) Вооружённых (14) Сил (15) состоят (16) из (17) частей (18) и соединений (19) различных родов войск (20) и специальных войск.

Ракетные войска стратегического назначения оснащены (21) мощными (22) ракетами различных типов, имеющими (23) атомные и термоядерные (24) заряды (25) огромной разрушительной (26) силы. Основу боевой мощи (27) Сухопутных войск (28) также составляет (29) теперь ракетно-ядерное оружие, но оперативно-тактического назначения.

Войска ПВО страны состоят (30) из (31) зенитных (32) ракетных войск, авиации ПВО, радиотехнических и специальных войск. Основой ВВС являются (33) самолёты-ракетоносцы, способные (34) наносить удары (35) ядерным (36) и обычным оружием. Главная ударная сила ВМФ - атомные подводные лодки, вооружённые (37) различными ракетами и самонаводящимися торпедами.

_____ (1) five _____ (2) of
 the _____ (3) _____ (4) in the So-
 viet Union: the Strategic Rocket Force , the Ground _____ (5),
 the National _____ (6) Forces (PVO), The _____
 _____ (7) (VVS), and the _____ (8) (VMF), as well as
 the _____ (9) and _____ (10) _____ (11).
 The _____ (13) of the _____ (14) _____ (15),
 _____ (12), _____ (16) _____ (17)
 _____ (18) and _____ (19) of various
 _____ (20) and special troops.

The Strategic Rocket Force _____ (21) with _____
 _____ (22) missiles of various types _____
 _____ (23) nuclear and _____ (24) _____ (25)
 of tremendous _____ (26) power. Nuclear missiles
 now also _____ (29) the basis of the Ground _____ (28)
 combat _____ (27), but these are for tactical purposes.

The National PVO Forces _____ (30) _____ (31)
 _____ (32) Rocket Forces, PVO aircraft, electronic
 warfare troops and special troops. The basis of the VVS (Air
 Force) _____ (33) missile-bearing aircraft _____ (34)
 of _____ (35) with _____ (36) and
 conventional weapons. The main striking force of the VMF (Navy)
 are nuclear submarines that _____ (37) with various
 missiles and guided torpedoes.

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. В Советском Союзе есть пять видов Вооружённых Сил: Ракетные войска, Войска противовоздушной обороны (ПВО) страны, Военно-воздушные силы (ВВС), Военно-Морской Флот (ВМФ), а также пограничные и внутренние войска.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. What words is противовоздушный formed from?

2. В свою очередь, виды Вооружённых Сил состоят из частей и соединений различных родов войск и специальных войск.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. Explain the meaning of the preposition в.
 - d. What are the gender, number and case of the word соединение in the sentence?

3. Ракетные войска стратегического назначения оснащены мощными ракетами различных типов, имеющими атомные и термоядерные заряды огромной разрушительной силы.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. In what case is the noun ракета in the sentence? Explain why.
 - d. What part of speech is the word имеющий?
 - e. What word does it modify?
 - f. What word does the word сила modify?

4. Основу боевой мощи Сухопутных войск также составляет теперь ракетно-ядерное оружие, но оперативно-тактического назначения.
- Give the case of the word основа in the sentence. Explain why it is in that case.
 - What word does основа modify?
 - Why is the word назначение in the genitive case?
5. Войска ПВО страны состоят из зенитных ракетных войск, авиации ПВО, радиотехнических и специальных войск.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What is the predicate?
 - Explain the meaning of the preposition из in the sentence.
6. Основой ВВС являются самолёты-ракетоносцы, способные наносить удары ядерным и обычным оружием.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What is the predicate?
 - What part of speech is the word основа in the sentence?
 - Give the case of this word and explain why it is in that case.
 - What word does the word способный modify?

7. Главная ударная сила ВМФ - атомные подводные лодки, вооружённые различными ракетами и самонаводящимися торпедами.
- a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. What does the dash stand for in this sentence?
 - d. What part of speech is the word вооружённый in the sentence?
 - e. What word does the word вооружённый modify?
 - f. Is the word вооружённый an active or passive form?

LESSON IV

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. SECONDARY PARTS OF THE SENTENCE

Aside from the central theme of each sentence (conveyed by the principal parts - the subject and the predicate), certain additional information is also communicated to the listener/reader. This additional information is contained in the so-called secondary parts of the sentence.

Depending upon the question they answer, the secondary parts of the sentence fall into three categories - objects, attributes and adverbial modifiers. This lesson concentrates on the first of these - the object.

1. Objects:

The object is that part of the sentence which describes the person or thing which receives the action of the verb. Thus, the object answers one of the questions raised when using oblique cases. (See table next page.)

It should be pointed out that the questions listed are those which produce an answer in a case other than the nominative. Quite often prepositions accompany these questions and the answer will then include a prepositional phrase:

У КОГО ты был? - Я был у доктора.

К КОМУ ты идёшь? - Я иду к доктору.

На кого ты смотришь? - Я смотрю на доктора.

Над кем ты смеёшься? - Я смеюсь над доктором.

OBJECTS ³		
OBLIQUE CASE	QUESTION	EXAMPLE OF QUESTION AND ANSWER
GENITIVE	кого (animate)	Кого не было на собрании? Не было Бориса.
	чего (inanimate)	Чего у тебя нет? У меня нет <u>словаря</u> .
DATIVE	кому (animate)	Кому ты пишешь? Я пишу <u>Борису и Елене</u> .
	чему (inanimate)	Чему ты удивляешься? Я больше <u>ничему</u> не удивляюсь.
ACCUSATIVE	кого (animate)	<u>Кого</u> ты там знаешь? Я знаю <u>Бориса и Елену</u> .
	что (inanimate)	<u>Что</u> ты видишь на столе? Я вижу <u>карандаш и бумагу</u> .
INSTRUMENTAL	кем (animate)	<u>Кем</u> ты доволен? Я доволен <u>Борисом и Еленой</u> .
	чем (inanimate)	<u>Чем</u> командует капитан? Он командует <u>ротой</u> .
PREPOSITIONAL (LOCATIVE)	1. где 2. о ком (animate) о чём (inanimate)	1. Где ты был? - Я был <u>в клубе</u> . 2. <u>О ком</u> ты думаешь? Я думаю <u>о Борисе и Елене</u> . О чём он спрашивает? Он спрашивает <u>об экзамене</u> .

It is interesting to note that the above system of questions and answers is used in teaching Russian children the structure of their own language. If, for example, one asks a Russian youngster what case follows the verb ПОМОГАТЬ/ПОМОЧЬ, he will answer: КОМУ-ЧЕМУ. Since he has been using the case endings from childhood, he knows all the endings and uses them correctly. These "questions" simply serve to show him the system by which the grammatical forms are used.

You will find that using this system will aid you in remembering certain grammatical and syntactical relationships. For example, when learning a new verb, learn the question which follows that verb:

to envy - завидовать - кому/чему

This tells you that the Dative Case follows this verb.

2. Direct and Indirect Objects

Direct Object

A direct object is that secondary part of the sentence which receives the action of a transitive verb. Most often, the direct object answers the question КОГО/ЧТО? (accusative case).⁴

Кого ты спросил об этом? Я спросил Виктора об этом.

Что ты пьёшь? Я пью вино.

In Russian, a verb must take an accusative case object in order to be transitive. There are many verbs in Russian which take objects in cases other than the accusative.

Чего ты боишься? Я боюсь собак.
(Gen.) (Gen.)

Indirect Object

The indirect object is that secondary part of the sentence which denotes the person to whom a direct object is said, given, sent, etc. It usually answers the question КОМУ/ЧЕМУ?

Кому ты дал книгу? Я дал книгу Виктору.

3. Objects of Prepositions

As in English, prepositions take objects which denote the person or thing addressed by the verb (about which, to whom, from whom, etc.). In Russian, the object of a preposition is that noun or pronoun which follows a given preposition and appears in the case required by that preposition:

О чём ты говоришь? Я говорю о Советском Союзе.

С кем ты хочешь говорить? Я хочу говорить с директором.

4. Clauses as Objects of Prepositions

Quite often, clauses are linked by prepositions. In English an entire clause can serve as the object of a preposition and can immediately follow it:

	preposition	clause
We got home	<u>before</u>	[it started to rain].

In Russian, however, a clause cannot immediately follow a preposition. The preposition must be "linked" to a clause by a complex conjunction.

A complex conjunction serves as the linking phrase between a preposition and a clause. It consists of:

- 1) a preposition
- 2) the pronoun TO (in the case required by the preposition)
- 3) a linking word (КАК, ЧТО or ЧТОБЫ)

Examples:

	clause
Мы приехали домой <u>до того, как</u> [пошёл дождь].	
We got home <u>before</u> it started to rain.	

	clause
Я ему дал это письмо <u>для того, чтобы</u> [он его отнёс на почту].	
I gave him that letter <u>to</u> take to the post office.	

	clause
Мы опоздали <u>из-за того, что</u> [он нас пригласил в последнюю минуту].	
We were late <u>because</u> he invited us at the last moment.	

	clause
<u>Вместо того, чтобы</u> [поступить в университет], Ваня пошёл работать на завод.	
<u>Instead of</u> going to college, Vanya went to work at a factory.	

Although there is no specific rule as to which linking word (КАК, ЧТО or ЧТОБЫ) to use with which prepositions, the chart below illustrates general guidelines and tendencies. The best way to learn which linking word accompanies a given preposition is to memorize the entire complex conjunction as a set phrase:

до того, как = before

PREPOSITIONS INDICATING	LINKING WORD	EXAMPLE
time (e.g. до, после, перед)	как	до того, <u>как</u> - before ... после того, <u>как</u> - after ... с тех пор, <u>как</u> - since ...
fact, cause, or reason (e.g. из-за, от, благодаря)	что	из-за того, <u>что</u> - because ... от того, <u>что</u> - due to ... за то, <u>что</u> - for; due to ...
wishes, commands or preference (e.g. <u>вместо</u> , <u>для</u> , <u>не для</u>)	чтобы	вместо того, <u>чтобы</u> - instead of ... rather than ... для того, <u>чтобы</u> - so that ... in order to ...

NOTE: Quite often, especially in spoken Russian, the linking phrase для того, чтобы is shortened to чтобы:

Он пришёл для того, чтобы познакомиться с ней. =
Он пришёл, чтобы познакомиться с ней.

5. The following chart summarizes the most common complex conjunctions in Russian:

COMPLEX CONJUNCTION	EXAMPLE
до того, как	Это случилось до того, как я приехал сюда.
вместо того, чтобы	Вместо того, чтобы заниматься, он пошел в клуб.
за то, что	Я его поблагодарил за то, что он мне помог.
из-за того, что	Я опоздал на урок из-за того, что вчера вечером забыл завести будильник.
несмотря на то что	Он всё-таки (nevertheless) пошел на работу, несмотря на то что чувствовал себя плохо.
о том, что	Что вы думаете о том, что он предлагает?
от того, что	Это зависит от того, что решит начальник.
перед тем, как	Она была здесь перед тем, как ты позвонил.
после того, как	Они пришли через 10 минут после того, как фильм начался.
с тех пор, как	Я хорошо себя чувствую с тех пор, как бросил курить.
для того, чтобы	Мы приехали сюда для того, чтобы принять участие в соревнованиях.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word information sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. We received a strongly worded letter from our boss.

2. Don't interfere in my business!

3. Ask her, she has a terrific memory.

4. The enemy struck unexpectedly from the southern front.

5. I don't have a favorite city.

6. After the party he left without even saying thanks to the host.

7. After two months in prison, he confessed to everything.

8. Congratulations! I wish you the very best from the bottom of my heart.

LESSON IV

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension

WORD BOUNDARIES

Problems in determining word boundaries (i.e. in determining where one word ends and the next begins) are caused by syllable reduction and by slurring.

The endings are often "run together", making it difficult to establish word boundaries.

Example:

Полосу вижу, иду на посадку.

If you do not know the word посадка, you might incorrectly transcribe this combination of words as полос увижу. By consulting the dictionary, however, you will find the word "полоса", is a feminine noun. There is no noun полос in the nominative case. Therefore, since the verb видеть is transitive and requires an accusative case direct object, and since one function of the ending y is to denote the accusative singular of a feminine noun ending in -a, the combination must be полосу вижу. One further reason: увижу would be perfective future, but the other verb is present tense. This should also tell you that something is wrong in the transcription of this two-word combination.

Section Two: Exercises

Упражнение №1. Listen carefully to the following sentences. Each sentence will be read twice. After the second reading, supply the correct form of the missing word(s) as dictated by the context.

1. Он всегда встаёт очень _____.
2. _____ была очень глубокой.
3. Он обещал, что _____ мне дадут это завтра.
4. Так, дайте это им, _____ мне.
5. Насчёт таких _____, я ничего не могу сказать.
6. Ты уверен, что он _____?
7. Как только он откроет _____, все поймут, что он дурак.
8. Этому полку придали ещё 5 мотострелковых _____.
9. Мы поедem, _____ его машина будет тогда отремонтирована.
10. Узнайте, _____ у него машина.

Упражнение №2. Now translate each of the sentences into English.

Упражнение №3. Listen to the passage recorded on your cassette and answer the following questions.

1. Have the maneuvers described in the passage taken place yet?

2. How many troops were mentioned as taking part in the maneuvers?

3. Where is the location given for the maneuvers?

4. What country's military forces are listed as participating?
-

5. When are the maneuvers to take place?
-

Section Three: Preparation of Oral Reports

Select a news item on any subject from a media source (radio, TV, press). Prepare a three minute talk on that item to be presented in Russian during the Comprehension/Communication hour. Be sure to include the essential elements of information: who, what, when, where and why.

You may use notes but do not read your talk. Be prepared to answer questions asked by your instructor and classmates.

LESSON V

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. SECONDARY PARTS OF THE SENTENCE (cont'd)

The object was discussed at length in Lesson 4. This lesson addresses the remaining secondary parts of the sentence, the Attribute and Adverbial Modifier.

1. The Attribute

The attribute is that part of the sentence which answers one of the following questions:

какой? - what (kind of)? which?

чей? - whose?

который? - which one?

сколько? - how many? how much?
(only in the oblique cases)

As such, the attribute provides additional information and may appear in the form of:

- | | |
|--|--|
| an adjective | - О какой машине ты говоришь?
- Я говорю о <u>жёлтой</u> машине. |
| an ordinal numeral | - На каком этаже ты работаешь?
- Я работаю на <u>втором</u> этаже. |
| a cardinal numeral | - Со сколькими товарищами ты приехал?
- Я был там с <u>тремя</u> товарищами. |
| a possessive | - На чьей машине ты приехал?
- Я приехал на <u>их</u> машине. |
| a noun in the genitive case without a preposition | - Чью книгу он взял?
- Он взял книгу <u>брата</u> . |
| a noun in the genitive, dative, accusative, instrumental, or prepositional case with a preposition | - Какая дверь была открыта?
- Дверь <u>в коридор</u> .

- Какой костюм ты купил?
- Я купил костюм <u>из шерсти</u> . |
| a demonstrative adjective | - Какую книгу ты хочешь?
- Я хочу <u>эту</u> книгу? |
| an infinitive | - Какое задание вы получили?
- Мы получили задание <u>уничтожить</u> танки противника. |

SUMMARY OF ATTRIBUTES

QUESTION	ATTRIBUTE WHICH ANSWERS THE QUESTION	EXAMPLE
КАКОЙ/КОТОРЫЙ? (which; what, what kind of)	1. an adjective 2. an ordinal numeral 3. a noun in an oblique case with a preposition 4. a demonstrative adjective 5. an infinitive	1. - <u>Какую</u> газету ты читаешь? - Я читаю <u>советскую</u> газету. 2. - <u>Какой</u> урок вы сейчас проходите? - Мы сейчас проходим <u>14-ый</u> урок. 3. - В <u>каком</u> доме он живёт? - Он живёт в доме <u>около</u> <u>почты</u> . 4. - <u>Какую</u> шляпу ты хочешь купить? - Я хочу вот <u>эту</u> (шляпу). 5. - О <u>какой</u> привычке ты говоришь? - Я говорю о привычке <u>закрывать</u> за собой дверь.
ЧЕЙ? (whose)	1. a noun in the genitive (<u>no</u> preposition) 2. a possessive	1. - На <u>чьей</u> машине ты приехал? - Я приехал на машине <u>отца</u> . 2. - О <u>чьей</u> квартире ты говорил? - Я говорил о <u>твоей</u> квартире.
СКОЛЬКО? (how much/ how many)	1. a cardinal numeral 2. a form of <u>несколько</u> or <u>многие</u>	1. - На <u>скольких</u> машинах они приехали? - Они приехали на <u>четырёх</u> машинах. 2. - Со <u>сколькими</u> студентами вы говорили? - Не помню! С <u>несколькими</u> .

2. Adverbial Modifiers

Adverbial modifiers are those secondary parts of the sentence which provide additional details such as time, place, manner, purpose and cause about the action performed.

There are several basic types of adverbial modifiers. They are classified according to the type of additional information they convey.

3. Adverbial Modifiers of Manner

Adverbial Modifiers of Manner answer the question КАК? (how) and КАКИМ ОБРАЗОМ? (how, in what way, in what manner) and may be expressed by:

хорошо	тихо	неожиданно
плохо	слабо	правильно
быстро	ясно	неправильно
медленно	неясно	осторожно
внимательно	ужасно	прекрасно
громко	отлично	спокойно

Как он пишет по-русски?

Он очень хорошо пишет по-русски.

Как студенты слушают?

Они слушают внимательно.

A noun in the instrumental case (with or without the preposition С)

Как мне рассказывать этот текст?

Расскажи его своими словами.

Каким образом он это сделал?

Он это сделал с помощью друзей.

БЕЗ + noun (genitive)

Как они это сделали?

Они это сделали без труда.

Как он написал диктовку?

Он её написа́л без ошибок.

Imperfective verbal adverbs

Как он говорил?

Он говорил волнуясь.

Дождь шёл не переставая.

4. These secondary parts of the sentence expand upon the basic meaning of the sentence by adding the element of location, goal of motion or place of origin of the action. Thus, adverbial modifiers of place answer the questions где?, куда?, откуда?

Adverbial modifiers of place are expressed by either:

a) an adverb of place (туда, вперёд, сзади, домой, etc.)

or

b) a noun in an oblique case, usually with a preposition (в школе, на почту, к врачу, за рекой, etc.)

The following chart lists some of the most frequent prepositions (by case) which are used in combination with nouns to express adverbial modifiers of place.

Question	Prepositions Answering the Question	Case
Г Д Е	вдоль, вне, внутри, вокруг, напротив, около, среди, у	Genitive
	за, между, над, перед, под	Instrumental
	в, на, при (attached to)	Prepositional/ Locative
К У Д А	к	Dative
	в, за, на, под	Accusative
О Т К У Д А	из, из-за, (from behind), из-под (from under), от, с	Genitive

5. Adverbial Modifiers of Time

Adverbial Modifiers of Time answer the question когда (or some related question such as с каких пор, в котором часу, etc.) and are usually expressed by:

- a) an adverb of time (вчера, долго, редко, etc.)
 - b) a noun without a preposition, but in combination with either: весь, целый or каждый (весь день, целый месяц, каждое утро, всю неделю)
- or: a numeral (первого октября, два раза в день, etc.)
- c) a noun in an oblique case with a preposition (в августе, на неделю, за два часа, etc.)
 - d) a construction using a verbal adverb (приехав в Минск, уходя домой, etc.)

Since the various combinations of prepositions and nouns are quite numerous, the following chart is provided to assist you in identifying prepositional phrases expressing adverbial modifiers of time:

Question	Prepositions Answering the Question		Case
К О Г Д А	до, после		Genitive
	к, по (+ a <u>plural</u> noun)		Dative
	в, за (... до ...), на (+ a form of <u>день</u>), через		Accusative
	между, перед		Instrumental
	в, на (+ a form of <u>неделя</u>) ² при (+ an animate noun)		Prepositional/ Locative
с каких пор	с	Examples с 1958-го года; с утра	Genitive
до какого времени	до	до сентября; до пятницы	Genitive
к какому времени	к	к субботе; к трём часам	Dative
за какой срок (how soon?)	за	за неделю; за 20 минут	Accusative
на какой срок (for how long?)	на	на неделю; на два дня	Accusative
в котором часу? (at what time?)	в	в три часа; в шесть часов	Accusative

6. Adverbial Modifiers of Purpose

Adverbial modifiers of purpose answer the questions зачем? (why?) с какой целью (for what purpose?) and для чего? (what for)

They are expressed by either:

- a) an adverb of purpose (зачем-то, назло (for spite), etc.)
- b) для + a noun in the Genitive case (для отдыха, для защиты, для поддержки, etc.)
- c) на + a noun in the Accusative case (на ремонт, на постройку, на закрепление, etc.)
- d) an infinitive (отдохнуть, помочь, etc.)

7. Adverbial Modifiers of Cause

Adverbial modifiers of cause answer the questions почему? (why?), из-за чего? (why?) and по какой причине? (for what reason?)

They are expressed by:

- a) an adverb of cause (почему-то, поэтому, etc.)
- b) a construction using a verbal adverb (не найдя его дома, отставая от других, etc.)
- c) a noun following one of the prepositions below:
 - благодаря (+ Dative)
 - из-за (+ Genitive)
 - от (+ Genitive)
 - по (+ Dative)

The following chart summarizes adverbial modifiers by type and by the questions they answer.

Type of adverbial modifier	Questions they answer	Expressed in Russian by
Manner	как? (how?) каким образом? (in what manner?)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An adverb of manner. 2. A noun in the instrumental case (with or without the preposition <u>с</u>) 3. A verbal adverb.
Place	где? (where?) куда? (where to?) откуда? (where from?)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An adverb of place. 2. A noun in an oblique case with a preposition.
Time	когда? (when?) other questions relating to time (с каких пор? до какого времени? etc.)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An adverb of time. 2. A noun in combination with <u>весь</u>, <u>целый</u> or <u>каждый</u>. 3. A noun in an oblique case with a preposition. 4. A construction with a verbal adverb.
Purpose	зачем? (why?); с какой целью? (for what purpose?); для чего? (what for?)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An adverb of purpose. 2. <u>для</u> + noun in Genitive case. 3. <u>на</u> + noun in Accusative case. 4. The infinitive of a verb.
Cause	почему? (why?); <u>из-за</u> чего? (why?); по какой причине? (for what reason?)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An adverb of cause. 2. A construction with a verbal adverb. 3. A noun following <u>благодаря</u>, <u>из-за</u>, <u>от</u>, <u>по</u>.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. The spy was shot at dawn.

2. After the tanks crossed the river, the combat engineers blew up the bridge.

3. The pilot lost control of the plane and was shot down.

4. Her mother is a confirmed communist.

5. The engine in the German Leopard II tank has 1500 horsepower.

6. After how many hours of instruction is a pilot allowed to fly solo?

7. The reconnaissance data was so accurate that the combat mission was a complete success.

8. The captain convinced the major that he should attack the enemy's left flank.

LESSON V

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Хотя по численности(1) советская мотострелковая дивизия меньше американской, по (2) боевой мощи она превосходит(3) её. Это достигается(4) за счёт(5) увеличения огневой мощи боевых(6) частей и сокращения численности(7) штабного и обслуживающего персонала.

В мотострелковой дивизии имеется(8) три мотострелковых полка, танковый полк, отдельный(9) танковый батальон и дивизионная(10) артиллерия. Последняя(11) состоит(12) из(13) артиллерийского (гаубичного(14)) полка, зенитного полка, ракетного дивизиона(15), противотанкового дивизиона(16) и дивизиона многоствольных реактивных установок.

Кроме боевых(18) частей и подразделений(19), в дивизии есть разведывательный(20), транспортный, инженерный, химический и ремонтный батальоны, батальон связи(21), а также медико-санитарный батальон. Снабжение(22) частей и подразделений(23) боеприпасами, горючим(24) и продовольствием осуществляется(25) службами тыла дивизии.

Although a Soviet motorized rifle division is _____ (1) smaller than an American division, it _____ (3) it _____ (2) combat strength. This is _____ (4) _____ (5) an increase in the _____ (6) units' firepower and to a reduction in the _____ (7) of headquarters and support personnel.

In a motorized rifle division _____ (8) three motorized rifle regiments, a tank regiment, an _____ (9) tank battalion, and _____ (10) artillery. _____ (11) _____ (12) _____ (13) an artillery _____ (14)) regiment, an antiaircraft regiment, a missile _____ (15), an antitank _____ (16) and a multiple rocket launcher _____ (17).

In addition to the _____ (18) units and _____ (19), there is in a division a _____ (20) battalion, a transportation battalion, an engineer battalion, a chemical battalion, a maintenance battalion, a _____ (21) battalion, and also a medical battalion. The _____ (22) of the units and _____ (23) with ammunition, _____ (24), and rations _____ (25) by the division's rear services.

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. Хотя по численности советская мотострелковая дивизия меньше американской, по боевой мощи она превосходит её.
 - a. What is the subject and predicate of the first clause.
 - b. What is the subject and predicate of the second clause.
 - c. What secondary part of the sentence is по численности?
 - d. What is the meaning of the word стрелковый in the dictionary? Explain the derivation of the word мотострелковый.
 - e. In what case are the nouns численность and мощь after the preposition по?
 - f. Give the case of the pronoun она after the verb превосходить

2. Это достигается за счет увеличения огневой мощи боевых частей и сокращения численности штабного и обслуживающего персонала.
 - a. What are the subject and predicate of this sentence?
 - b. Give the case of the word увеличение in the sentence.
 - c. With what synonym can you replace the phrase за счёт?
 - d. What part of speech is сокращение?
 - e. Give the gender of the words увеличение and сокращение.
 - f. Explain why the word персонал is in the genitive case.

3. В мотострелковой дивизии имеется три мотострелковых полка, танковый полк, отдельный танковый батальон и дивизионная артиллерия.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. Find an adverbial modifier of place in the sentence.
 - c. Is this a personal or impersonal sentence?

4. Последняя состоит из артиллерийского (гаубичного) полка, зенитного полка, ракетного дивизиона, противотанкового дивизиона и дивизиона многоствольных реактивных установок.
- What does последняя refer to in the previous sentence?
 - What part of speech is the word последний in the text?
 - What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What is the predicate?
 - Give the number, gender and case of the last word in the sentence.
5. Кроме боевых частей и подразделений, в дивизии есть разведывательный, транспортный, инженерный, химический и ремонтный батальоны, батальон связи, а также медико-санитарный батальон.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What is the predicate?
 - What case is the word связь in? Explain why.
 - What is the full form of the acronym медико- ?
6. Снабжение частей и подразделений боеприпасами, горючим и продовольствием осуществляется службами тыла дивизии.
- Is this a personal or an impersonal sentence? Explain why.
 - What does the word припасы mean in Smirnitsky's dictionary?
 - What is the full form of the acronym бое- in the word боеприпасы?
 - Why is the word служба in the instrumental case?

LESSON VI

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. WORD ORDER IN RUSSIAN

Word order is said to be "fixed" in English. This means that, except for pronouns, words do not change to reflect case and that syntactical relationships are dependent upon the word order.

Example: The captain knows the lieutenant.

 The lieutenant knows the captain.

In Russian, however, since the forms change to express case, word order becomes less crucial. The following sentences express the same basic meaning:

subj. pred. d.o.
Капитан знает лейтенанта.

d.o. pred. subj.
Лейтенанта знает капитан.

Although variations in Russian word order do not usually change the basic meaning of an utterance, they do lend shades of meaning to the utterance. Compare the translations below:

По улице шёл человек.	<u>A</u> man was walking down the street. (No specific reference to who it was.)
Человек шёл по улице.	<u>The</u> man was walking down the street. (Here the speaker is indicating that he is speaking about someone whose identity has already been stated.)
Директора нет на заводе.	<u>The</u> director isn't at the factory.
На заводе нет директора.	There isn't <u>a</u> director at (this) factory.

Thus, one of the subtle nuances of Russian word order is the concept of articles (definite/indefinite). Although there are no hard and fast rules concerning Russian word order, the following generalizations may assist in comprehending the differences in meaning conveyed by the word order in Russian sentences.

1. Word Order in Questions and Answers

In general, Russian sentences express progressions of ideas from the known (familiar) to the unknown (new). Thus, the attention of the listener is often focused on the last elements of a sentence, especially when the sentence is an answer to a simple question. Compare:

<u>Где</u> книга?	Книга <u>на столе</u> .
<u>Where</u> is <u>the</u> book?	<u>The</u> book is <u>on the table</u> .

(на столе is that part of the response which answers the question где? .)

Что на столе?

На столе книга.

What is on the table? There is a book on the table.

(книга answers the question что?)

Кто вёл это собрание?

Это собрание вёл г-н Иванов.

(господин Иванов answers the question кто?)

2. The Position of the Subject and Predicate in the Sentence

In simple declarative sentences (statements) the subject normally precedes the predicate.

subj. pred.

Эта дорога ведёт в Киев.

This word order is quite common when the subject denotes a specific, known or previously identified object. In the example above, the speaker is indicating that it is a specific road which is being discussed.

If, however, a non-specific, general or unknown object is being discussed, the word order is often reversed (predicate → subject). The translation of such sentences often includes the indefinite English article "a" ("an").

Compare: *subj. pred.*
Поезд пришёл.

The train has arrived.
(We know which train it is that the speaker has in mind.)

pred. subj.
Пришёл поезд.

A train has arrived.
(We are not sure where it came from, nor can we give any specific information about it.)

3. The Particle ли

The particle ли is used in the subordinate clause of indirect questions and immediately follows the word in question:

Я хочу знать, поехал ли он туда.

I want to know if he went there.

Я хочу знать, туда ли он поехал.

I want to know if that's where he went.

4. The Position of the Word не in the Sentence.

The particle не negates whichever word it precedes.

Compare:

Я не еду в Москву. I'm not going to Moscow.

Не я еду в Москву. I'm not the one who's going to Moscow.

Я не в Москву еду, а в Киев. It's not Moscow I'm going to, but Kiev.

5. Approximation

In time expressions inverted word order may indicate approximation.

Compare:

Он приехал в три часа. He arrived at three o'clock.

Он приехал часа в три. He arrived around three o'clock.

Там он провёл 2 месяца. He spent 2 months there.

Там он провёл месяца 2. He spent about two months there.

B. DEVIATIONS FROM STANDARD WORD ORDER IN CONVERSATIONAL RUSSIAN

Word order may vary significantly in conversational Russian.

1. Nouns and Adjectives

An adjective often follows the noun it modifies for emphasis or for clarification. When this occurs for emphasis, the adjective normally receives intonational stress.

Ты уроки все сделал? - Have you done all the lessons?
(or only some of them)

Приказа никакого не было. - They didn't issue any order
at all.
(This might be said in response to a question such as "which order was issued first?")

Рассказ он написал отличный. - He did a super job on his story.
(intensifies the effect of the adjectives)

2. Adjective before Noun Construction

When the adjective precedes the noun (as is standard), other elements of the sentence may appear between them. This is done for emphasis and/or clarification, but often simply indicates colloquial usage:

Жуткий был холод! - It was really cold!

А вчера хорошая была погода? - Was the weather nice yesterday?
(colloquial word order)

3. Adverb and adjective

Adverbs normally precede the adjectives they modify:

Он очень хороший студент.

However, many adverbs, especially those indicating the idea of "very; very much", can either follow the adjective (usually for emphasis) or may be separated from the adjective by other elements of the sentence:

Очень у неё несчастный вид. - She really looks unhappy.

Она милая очень женщина. - She is a very nice lady.

Рада она была страшно! - She was really glad!

C. INTRODUCTION TO THE SYNTAX OF CONVERSATIONAL RUSSIAN

As is the case with English, spoken Russian often involves abbreviated language (one-word answers to question, "understood" elements of sentences, etc.) Consider the following short dialogue and its "full" text at right:

Conversational (abbreviated)
Form

- Саша, ты куда?
- В школу.
- Ты что? Ведь праздник!
- Неужели?
- Честно!

"Full" (literary) Form

- Саша, куда ты идёшь?
- Я иду в школу.
- Ты что, с ума сошёл? Ведь сегодня праздник!
- Неужели сегодня праздник?
- Честное слово!

When listening to such conversations, close attention must be paid to prior context when trying to determine which sentence elements have been deleted.

1. Deletion of Subject

The subject of a sentence may often be deleted (and thus "understood"), especially in elliptical sentences which are answers to questions.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer (Subject Deleted)</u>
<u>Ты</u> был вчера в клубе?	Да, был. (subj. <u>я</u> deleted)
Что <u>вы</u> сейчас делаете?	Сажу, читаю журналы. (subj. <u>я</u> deleted)
Что делает <u>Иван</u> ?	Сидит, читает журналы. (subj. <u>он</u> deleted)
А <u>она</u> его любит?	Любит! А как же? (subj. <u>она</u> deleted)
<u>Она</u> придет сегодня?	По-моему, придет. (subj. <u>она</u> deleted)

Also, in complex sentences, if the subject of the second clause is a pronoun and refers to the same person as in the first clause, this "pronominal" subject is often deleted in the second clause:

Иван сказал, что придет завтра. (он deleted)

Она уверена, что имеет полное право на это. (она deleted)

Ивановы пишут, что придут в марте. (они deleted)

2. Deletion of Subject and Predicate

Some elliptical sentences delete both the subject and the predicate. Again, this occurs most often in answers to questions and the deleted items can be clearly identified by prior context.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer (Subj. & Pred. deleted)</u>
Лёня, ты во сколько приедешь?	Часа в 3. (subj. <u>я</u> & pred. <u>приеду</u> deleted)
Куда вы сейчас идёте?	В штаб. (subj. <u>я</u> & pred. <u>иду</u> deleted)
Откуда они идут?	С вокзала. (subj. <u>они</u> & pred. <u>идут</u> deleted)
Какую книгу вы хотите?	Вот эту. (subj. <u>я</u> & pred. <u>хочу</u> deleted)
Сколько времени ты там работал?	Четыре года. (subj. <u>я</u> & pred. <u>работал</u> deleted)

Note that the part of the answer which actually answers the question can, of course, never be deleted.

3. Deletion of Verbs

Depending upon prior context, many types of verbs can be deleted in Russian utterances. For example, in the statement, "Об этом я не буду", any of the following verbs could have been deleted, depending on the context which preceded the statement:

Об этом я не буду	}	говорить думать волноваться писать читать рассказывать заботиться etc.
-------------------	---	---

Thus, one must pay close attention to prior context in order to determine which verb or verb type was omitted.

For Example:

Verbs of Motion

- Ты сейчас куда? (идёшь deleted)

- Я за хлебом. (иду deleted)

Verbs of Placing

Ты опять свою машину на моё место! (поставил)

Verbs of Giving and Taking

- Что вы будете пить?

- Мне пожалуйста, чаю. (дайте)

Verbs of Speaking and Recounting

Это вы про Бориса? (говорите)

- Расскажи, как ты провёл отпуск.

- Сейчас некогда. Я потом.

(расскажу)

4. Other part of the sentence (e.g. direct object) or parts of speech (e.g. adverbs) can also be deleted depending upon the context.

For Example:

Они что, в карты? (играют deleted)

- Какую тетрадь ты хочешь, синюю или красную?

- Я возьму красную. (тетрадь deleted)

- Он живёт на 10-ом этаже.

- Ой, пешком на 10-ый тяжело будет.

(этаж and подняться deleted)

- Ну, приеду, скажи. (если or когда deleted)

As is evident, the grammatical forms as well as the context must be carefully examined in order to make a logical guess as to which elements have been deleted.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. The pilot tested the new fire control system.

2. The motorized rifle troops gained a sweeping victory.

3. The company commander had to take drastic measures.

4. Being near death he forgave his enemies.

5. The soldiers marched resolutely into the decisive battle.

6. The fighter plane disappeared beyond the horizon.

7. The commander decided to order an air raid.

8. Who threatened whom in this matter?

LESSON VI

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension (On Tape)

A. FALLING INTONATION

Listen carefully to the following sentences:

Пётр сегодня дома.

Это карандаш.

Меня там не было.

In each of the above sentences, the intonation is downward (or "falling"). This intonational pattern is very typical of spoken Russian and appears in statements, exclamations, commands and questions with interrogative words. (e.g. куда, где, почему, etc.)

Examples:

statement - Это письмо.

exclamation - Я устал от этого!

command - Закройте дверь!

question with interrogative word - Куда вы идёте?

B. RISING INTONATION

Rising intonation appears most frequently in questions without an interrogative word.

Examples: (the underlined word or syllable is spoken with a rise in pitch.)

Это карандаш?

Вы там будете?

Notice the difference in intonation between the following questions and answers:

- Вы туда идёте (rising)
- Нет, я не иду. (falling)
- Это казарма? (rising)
- Нет, это столовая. (falling)

C. COLLOQUIAL INTONATION

Sometimes intonational patterns have a drastic effect on meaning. Listen carefully to the following exchange:

- Вы хотите, чтобы он вам помог?
- Да нужна мне его помощь!

The answer begins with the word да. Here, however, it is a filler and does not mean "yes". Also, the intonational stress of the answer falls on the word нужна and, as a result, the exact opposite of its actual meaning is implied. The answer would translate as: "I certainly don't need his help!"

The only way to determine instances of this phenomenon is to pay close attention to both the context and the speaker's intonation.

Section Two: Exercises

Упражнение №1. You will hear 3 conversational exchanges in Russian. Write down each exchange and translate each into English. Be prepared to point out instances of intonational effect of meaning.

1. - _____
- _____
2. - _____
- _____
3. - _____
- _____

Упражнение №2. Listen to the broadcast recorded on your cassette and answer the questions pertaining to it. You may replay the tape as many times as necessary.

1. What countries are to participate in the upcoming maneuvers?

2. What branches of arms will participate?

3. When will the maneuvers begin?

4. How many South Korean troops will participate?

5. How many U.S. troops?

Section Three: Text Restoration

Restore the text using the words provided in the list below. The words are given in their dictionary forms and must be changed as required by the context. Each word may be used only once. There are extra words in the list. The restored text will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Работа в _____, _____ одного из домов в городе Каменск-Шахтинском _____ в земле несколько _____.

Когда же _____ группа _____ во _____ с лейтенантом В. Чумановым, то _____, что буквально в полутора метрах _____ дома _____ целый _____ боеприпасов, _____ со времён Великой Отечественной войны. _____ работа воинов _____ двое _____.

А вскоре _____ городом _____ степью прогрохотали _____.

до	вывести	бригада	артиллерийский
за	находиться	взрыв	внимательный
от	обнаружить	глава	напряженный
над	оставить	житель	центральный
в	оказаться	земля	
	прибыть	результат	
	продолжаться	сад	
	разрешить	сапер	
		склад	
		снаряд	
		стена	
		сутки	

LESSON VII

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. VERBAL ASPECTS

Aspect is the single most important characteristic of the Russian verb as it affects each and every verbal form. Unfortunately, it is, at the same time, one of the perpetual problem areas for the student studying Russian. It might well be that the student's recurring errors in aspect are tied to the looseness of the English tense structure. One is apt to forget that English uses six tenses and two forms (twelve total forms) to render what Russian does by way of five forms (three imperfective, two perfective). In theory, English verbs are inflected to show the time at which an action occurs. In practice, however, the English verb often has little relation to the time of the action. Thus the present tense may refer to past, present, or future actions or to actions that run through past, present, and future. For example:

This fall Thomas Hearn finally gets a shot at the title.
(Tense - present; time - future).

History always repeats itself.
(Tense - present; time - past, present, future)

Moreover, English has ways of indicating time by idiom rather than by tense. For example, in the following sentences the events have not yet occurred, yet not once is the future tense used.

I am going to read the book tomorrow.

We are to visit them next week.

They are to be married next spring.

I expect to hear from him within the next few days.

Be sure to drop in whenever you come to town.

Russian, on the other hand, uses aspect to distinguish between process and completion. Imperfective verbs occur in all three tenses, while perfective verbs occur only in the past and future tenses.

B. THE IMPERFECTIVE ASPECT

The imperfective aspect is used in Russian to focus the attention of the listener on the process of an action which is, was, or will be going on. The imperfective aspect describes an action which:

1. is in progress at the present time:

Она сейчас пишет письма.

2. is, was, or will be continuous (without interruption):

Она уже весь день пишет письма.

Она весь день писала письма

Она весь день будет писать письма.

3. is, was, or will be recurrent or habitual:

Она каждый день пишет письма.

Она очень часто писала письма.

Она будет писать письма по субботам.

4. expresses generality (without mentioning specific results):

Она любит писать письма.

Remember that, due to the above characteristics, the imperfective aspect will often be accompanied by words denoting:

- a. process (in the present tense) - such as сейчас, теперь, в данный момент, в настоящее время, etc.
- b. recurrent or habitual action such as обычно, часто, иногда, всегда, редко, каждый день, по пятницам, по утрам, раз в месяц, раньше ("previously"), etc.
- c. duration - such as долго, недолго, все утро, весь день, целый месяц, всю неделю, с утра до вечера, три часа, etc.
- d. generality - such as любить (+ INF), в общем (on the whole) вообще (generally speaking), etc.

C. THE PERFECTIVE ASPECT

The perfective aspect is used in Russian to focus the attention of the listener on the result of an action which was or will be achieved or completed at a certain specific time in the past or future. The perfective aspect is used if:

1. the completion or result of an action is emphasized:

Он уже послал письмо.

Я сделаю это завтра.

2. the action was (or will be) performed one time and at a specific moment in time (in the past or future):¹

Когда урок кончился, он встал и ушел.

Я сделаю это к пятнице.

3. a series of actions is described in which one is to be completed before another begins.

Я встал, помылся, оделся и пошел на работу.

Сначала она сделает перевод, потом выучит диалог и только тогда ляжет спать.

-
1. Two notable exceptions to this are the verbs видеть and слышать. Remember that the perfective увидеть means "to catch sight of" and the perfective услышать stresses the very moment at which someone initially hears something. Therefore видеть and слышать are used to express one-time action as if they were perfectives.

Examples:

Я видел его, когда я шел в город.

I saw him on my way to town.

Ты это слышал?

Did you hear that?

D. ASPECT OF GOING VERBS

Non-prefixed going verbs exist in a three-infinitive format: two imperfective and one perfective.

INDEFINITE	PERFECTIVE	PERFECTIVE
ходить	идти	пойти
ездить	ехать	поехать
летать	лететь	полететь
бегать	бежать	побежать
плавать	плыть	поплыть
носить	нести	понести
водить	вести	повести
возить	везти	повезти

All of the above verbs have the following in common:

1. the "indefinite" imperfective denotes motion without a specific goal or habitual/recurrent motion to and from a place:

Он ходил по комнате и курил.

Я часто езжу туда.

2. the past tense of the "indefinite" imperfective denotes motion to a place and back:

Сегодня утром я ходил в банк. (= пошел туда и вернулся)

3. the "definite" imperfective basically denotes being in the process of going to a specific place:

Я сейчас иду домой - (I'm on my way home.)

Когда я его видел, он шел домой. - (When I saw him, he was on his way home.)

4. the present tense of the "definite" imperfective may often be used in place of the future tense:

Завтра я еду в Лос Анжелес.

Завтра он летит в Европу.

5. the basic perfective form (по-) concentrates the attention of the listener on the beginning of the motion as well as on the fact that the speaker is describing a one-time, completed action:

Его уже нет. Он пошел в клуб.

Мы поехали туда в три часа.

Remember that prefixed verbs (other than по-) exist in a normal two-infinitive format and function as regular imperfective-perfective pairs.

IMPERFECTIVE

PERFECTIVE

уходить

уйти

уезжать

уехать

улетать

улететь

убегать

убежать

уносить

унести

уводить

увести

увозить

увезти

Он часто приходит к нам в гости.

Вчера он пришёл в 3 часа.

Note that, as with the past tense of the indefinite imperfective in the meaning of a round trip, these constructions in the imperfective can be replaced by БЫТЬ.

Я ходил на почту. = Я был на почте.

Similarly:

Ко мне приезжал брат. = Барт был у меня. теперь его нет
К тебе кто-то заходил. = Здесь был кто-то. (его/её уже нет)

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. He is not here any longer. He went to the PX.

2. Someone dropped in to see you.

3. I would like to take the opportunity to thank you for your help.

4. She is held in high respect.

5. Do you know if Lena knows how to drive a car?

6. He said that he will do it tomorrow.

7. We tried to fix the car, but nothing came of it.

8. You will be unable to finish this work in an hour.

LESSON VII

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Артиллерийский полк советской мотострелковой дивизии имеет три гаубичных(1) дивизиона(2). Гаубицы(3) могут быть буксирными(4) или самоходными(5). В полку есть также штабная(6) батарея, батарея управления огнём и подразделение(7) служб тыла(8).

Полковая(9) штабная(10) батарея поддерживает(11) всю административную и оперативную(12) работу штаба. Её личный состав выполняет(13) задачи по разведке(14), связи(15), направлению огня(16) и транспорту.

Каждый дивизион состоит из трёх гаубичных(17) батарей. Батарея, как военное(18) подразделение(19), эквивалентна(20) мотострелковой роте. Батарея включает в себя(21) два огневых взвода, взвод управления огнём и отделение тяги. В каждом огневом взводе имеются три гаубицы(22). Личный состав(23), обслуживающий(24) одно орудие(25), называется расчётом(26). Каждый расчёт(27) состоит из 6-8 человек, включая(28) командира орудия(29) в звании(30) сержанта.

An artillery regiment of a Soviet motorized rifle division has three _____ (1) _____ (2). _____ (3) can be _____ (4) or _____ (5). A regiment also has a _____ (6) company, a target-acquisition battery and _____ (8) services _____ (7).

The _____ (9) _____ (10) company _____ (11) the entire administrative and _____ (12) work of the headquarters. The personnel of the headquarters company _____ (13) missions in _____ (14), _____ (15), _____ (16) direction and transportation.

Each artillery battalion consists of three _____ (17) batteries. A battery, as a _____ (18) _____ (19), is _____ (20) to a motorized rifle company. A battery _____ (21) two fire platoons, a target acquisition platoon and a towing section. There are three _____ (22) in each fire platoon. The _____ (23) who _____ (24) a single _____ (25) are called a _____ (26). Each _____ (27) consists of 6-8 men, _____ (28) a _____ (29) commander _____ (30) sergeant.

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. Артиллерийский полк советской мотострелковой дивизии имеет три гаубичных дивизиона.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. Which military unit is larger, a дивизия or a дивизион?

2. Гаубицы могут быть буксируемыми или самоходными.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. What part of speech is the word буксируемый?
 - d. Is it active or passive?
 - e. Explain the formation of the word самоходный.

3. В полку есть также штабная батарея, батарея управления огнём и подразделения служб тыла.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. Give the gender, number and case of the word подразделение in the sentence.
 - d. Give the case of the word полк in the sentence. Why does it have the ending -у?

4. Полковая штабная батарея поддерживает всю административную и оперативную работу штаба.
- What are the subject and predicate of the sentence?
 - What kind of object is the word работа in the sentence?
 - Give the case of the word работа in the sentence.
5. Её личный состав выполняет задачи по разведке, связи, направлению огня и транспорту.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - To what word in the previous sentence does the word её refer?
 - How did you translate the preposition по?
 - Give the case of the word связь in the sentence. Explain why it is in that case.
6. Каждый дивизион состоит из трёх гаубичных батарей.
- Is this a personal or impersonal sentence?
 - Give the case of the word три in the sentence. Explain why it is in that case.
7. Батарея, как военное подразделение, эквивалентна мотострелковой роте.
- What part of speech is the word эквивалентный in the sentence?
 - What word does эквивалентный modify?
 - Why does it have the ending -а in the sentence?
 - What principal part of the sentence is the word эквивалентный?
 - Give the case of the word рота in the sentence. Explain why it is in that case.

8. Батерая включает в себя два огневых взвода, взвод управления огнём и отделение тяги.
- What does включает в себя mean?
 - How does the word order differ between the Russian and English versions of взвод управления огнём and отделение тяги?
9. В каждом огневом взводе имеются три гаубицы.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What is the predicate?
10. Личный состав, обслуживающий одно орудие, называется расчётом.
- What are the subject and predicate of the sentence?
 - What part of speech is the word обслуживающий in the sentence?
 - What word does обслуживающий modify?
 - In what case is the word расчёт in the sentence? Why?
11. Каждый расчёт состоит из 6-8 человек, включая командира орудия в звании сержанта.
- What are the subject and predicate of the sentence?
 - In what case is 6-8 in the sentence? Why? What does the expression 6-8 mean?
 - Explain the grammatical construction в звании.

LESSON VIII

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents section of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. IMPERFECTIVE PAST TENSE

Often the imperfective past tense concentrates the attention of the listener on a period of time in the past. Therefore, it conveys certain subtle nuances of meaning.

1. the total absence of an action in the past:

Я этого не говорил.

I never said that.

Я не получал телеграммы от него.

I didn't get any telegram from him.

Я не брал твою газету.

I didn't touch your paper.

2. the fact that an action has taken place (at some un-specified time in the past):

Вы читали эту книгу?

Have you (ever) read this book?

Спасибо, я уже пил чай.

Thank you, I've already had some tea.

3. focusing the attention of the listener (in questions) on an element of the sentence other than the verb:

Кто писал эту книгу?

Who was it that wrote that book?

О чём она рассказывала?

What was it that she was telling you about?

4. One other use of the imperfective past is often quite difficult for students of Russian. Consider the following example within the given context: (Note: The speaker returns to class from lunch. It is a very cold day. The window in the classroom is closed.)

Почему в комнате так холодно? Why is it so cold in here here?

Кто-то, наверно, открывал окно! Somebody must have opened the window!

Since the window is now closed, the speaker cannot use the perfective past of the verb открыть. In effect, the action has been reversed. This construction has nothing to do with repetitive action. It simply means that someone opened the window but that later someone again closed it.

Other examples:

Ваня, зачем ты вставал с постели?

Vanya, how come you got up?
(Vanya is already back in bed)

Кто брал мою книгу?

Who's been fooling around with my book?
(someone had taken it and then returned it)

B. PERFECTIVE PAST TENSE

Since the perfective aspect stresses result, the perfective past is often used to express the following:

1. an action was performed several times in immediate succession:

Он прочитал телеграмму несколько раз.

He read through the telegram several times.

Я прочитал это письмо 3 раза.

I read through this entire letter 3 times.

2. the manner (or quality) in which something was done:

Кто так плохо написал этот диктант?

Who did such a bad job on this dictation?

Он очень хорошо покрасил мою машину.

He did a fine job of painting my car.

C. THE FUTURE TENSE

1. The perfective future indicates confidence on the part of the speaker that the performer will complete the action or achieve a result. Not in every case does the perfective imply that the performer is absolutely going to perform an action, only that if he does, he will be able to complete it:

Я прочитаю эту книгу сегодня.

I will read this book tonight. (and finish it)

Here the speaker and the performer are the same person, and this indicates a firm determination to bring the action to completion.

2. With adverbs like всегда the perfective future can be used to describe behavior characteristics of the performer of the action.

Он всегда поможет товарищу в трудную минуту.

He will always help a friend in need.

3. The imperfective future may indicate that the performer will engage in the action, but it is unknown whether or not he will complete it.

Я буду читать эту книгу сегодня вечером.

I will be reading this book tonight.
(engage in the activity)

D. NEGATION AND THE FUTURE TENSE

1. The perfective future is often negated to indicate that the performer of the action will not be able to achieve a certain result. This construction replaces мочь/сможь + INF.

Он не сдаст экзамена. Он плохо подготовился.

He's not going to pass the test. He didn't study enough for it.

Ты этого не сделаешь за час!

You can't do that in one hour!

Он не ответит на этот вопрос.

He can't answer that question.

2. The negated imperfective future often implies that the performer has no intention, need or desire to perform the actions at all:

Он не будет сдавать экзамена. Его освободили.

He doesn't have to take the test. They let him out of it.

Я не буду отвечать на этот вопрос.

I'm not going to answer that question. (or: I have no intention of answering that question.)

3. a result was expected, but in fact did not materialize (or has not yet materialized):

Я не получил его телеграмму. - I haven't yet received his telegram.

Она, наверно, придёт завтра. - It will probably arrive tomorrow.

Разве он еще не пришёл? - Hasn't he come yet?

Remember that all of the above uses of the imperfective and perfective past stem from the fact that the imperfective aspect stresses the process of an action, whereas the perfective stresses the result. The following examples illustrate this basic difference.

Мы долго решали эту задачу, но так и не решили её.

We worked on that problem for a long time, but just couldn't solve it.

Он доказывал всем, что был прав, но никому не доказал.

He tried to prove to everyone that he was right, but wasn't able to convince anyone.

Они убеждали нас, что это так, но меня они не убедили.

They tried to convince us that it was so, but I wasn't convinced by them.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. He did a fine job of painting my car.

2. She will always help a friend in need.

3. When we told her about this, she began to laugh.

4. I met a lot of new students at the party yesterday.

5. The weather was great but I wasn't feeling well and decided to stay at home.

6. The enemy began the offensive yesterday and today, they occupied three cities near Kiev.

7. He wanted to go to Europe but he didn't have the time or money.

8. My God! How long can one talk about one and the same thing.

LESSON VIII

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension

Упражнение №1. Listen to the broadcast recorded on your cassette and answer the questions pertaining to it. You may replay the tape as many times as necessary.

1. When did the air battle take place?

2. Where did it occur?

3. What countries' military were involved?

4. What were the Iranian military losses?

5. What was reported by Iran's military HQ?

Упражнение 2. Listen to the broadcast recorded on your cassette and answer the questions pertaining to it. You may replay the tape as many times as necessary.

1. What types of plane crashed?

2. In what type of activity was the aircraft engaged?

3. How many people died?

4. Who reported the crash?

Section Two: Preparation of Oral Reports

Select a news item on any subject from a media source (radio, TV, press). Prepare a three minute talk on that item to be presented in Russian during the Comprehension/Communication hour. Be sure to include the essential elements of information: Who, what, when, where, and why.

You may use notes but do not read your talk. Be prepared to answer questions asked by your instructor and classmates.

LESSON IX

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. THE ASPECT OF THE INFINITIVE

The choice of which infinitive to use generally depends on whether the speaker is describing an action (imperfective) or a result (perfective). The infinitive also expresses the various basic characteristics of the aspects (such as one-time action versus repetitive action).

Советую вам купить эту книгу. (one time situation)

Советую вам покупать книги в этом магазине. (as a general rule)

In some instances the choice of which aspect infinitive to use has a significant effect on the meaning being conveyed.

Здесь нельзя переходить улицу.

Crossing the street at this place is prohibited.
(indicating a legal restriction, for example)

Здесь нельзя перейти улицу.

You can't get across the street here.
(it is impossible to cross due to some factor such as heavy traffic, a barrier, etc.)

1. Infinitive used with НЕЛЬЗЯ

As a general rule (there are exceptions) нельзя is followed by the imperfective infinitive in the meanings of "one must not....", "one should not....", and "it is not permissible (legal, allowed, etc.)..."

Нельзя + Perfective infinitive usually implies that the result of an action is, for some reason, unattainable (impossible to achieve).

Нельзя читать чужие письма.

You shouldn't read other people's letters.

Это письмо так плохо написано, что его нельзя прочитать.

This letter is so poorly written, that it's impossible to read.

2. The imperfective infinitive follows verbs which denote the beginning, end, or continuation of an action.

Я начал читать эту книгу вчера.

Продолжайте писать.

Она кончила писать письма и ушла.

Verbs in this category requiring an imperfective infinitive include:

начинать
начать

продолжать

кончать
кончить

бросать (in the meaning of "to
бросить quit" doing something)

переставать
перестать

стать (in the meaning of
to begin)

3. The imperfective infinitive also follows other verbs which, by their meaning, suggest that a certain process should follow.

Я привык вставать рано.

Verbs in this category requiring an imperfective infinitive include:

привыкать
привыкнуть

отвыкать
отвыкнуть

любить (in the meaning of "to like" doing something) избегать

учиться
научиться

надоедать (when used impersonally,
надоест e.g. Мне надоело его слушать)

4. The imperfective infinitive follows certain expressions whose meanings indicate that an action is unnecessary, useless, or even harmful.

Не сто́ит с ним об этом говорить.

Such expressions include:

не надо (in the meaning of "one shouldn't")

не нужно

не следует (one shouldn't)

не сто́ит

не́зачем (there is no reason to)

хватит

довольно (= хватит)

доста́точно

беспо́лезно (there is no use in)

пора (it's time to)

5. The perfective infinitive usually follows the verbs забыть, успеть, and удаться.

Тебе удалось сделать это вовремя?

Я забыл ему позвонить.

Ты успеешь всё кончить?

As is often the case with Russian verbal aspect, the choice of which infinitive is used ultimately depends on the emphasis imparted to the sentence by the speaker.

6. Verbs having only One Form for both Aspects

There are a few verbs in Russian which have only one form. This form is used both as an imperfective as well as a perfective verb. Confusion may sometimes arise as to which aspect is being used. Context will dictate whether these verb forms are being used as imperfective or perfective. Two frequently used verbs of this type are:

атаковать - to attack; to assault
 организовать - to organize; to set (something) up

Note the uses of these forms to express both aspects:

Противник атаковал нас вчера в 1415. (Perfective)

Раньше истребители атаковали только сверху. (Imperfective)

Кто это так плохо организовал всё? (Perfective)

Он часто организует такие вечера. (Imperfective)

The dictionary will tell you which verbs function in this manner. The entry for such a verb will include the following abbreviation: несов. и сов. (несовершенный и совершенный).

E. ASPECT WITH IMPERATIVE

1. Infinitive used in place of the Imperative

In the Soviet military, imperatives (of both aspect) are often replaced by the infinitive.

Examples:

Доложи́ть гото́вность!	=	Доложи́те гото́вность!
Нача́ть наступле́ние в 13.45!	=	Начни́те наступле́ние в 13.45!
Таких разгово́ров по радио́ не ве́сти!	=	Не ве́дите таких разгово́ров по радио́!
Огонь́ ра́ньше 10.05 не открыва́ть!	=	Не открыва́йте огонь́ ра́ньше 10.05!

Note that, as with imperatives, the imperfective infinitive is usually used with negation, whereas the perfective infinitive is used when making a positive command. Keep in mind that these forms are stronger than the imperative and thus may be considered impolite if used in everyday conversation.

2. The negated perfective imperative

Usually, negation requires the imperfective imperative.

Example:

Не говори́те ему́ об э́том! - Don't tell him about that!

There are, however, a few verbs whose perfective imperative may be used with negation. This construction is used to tell someone to watch what he/she is doing so as not to inadvertently do something which would involve an undesired result.

Example:

Смотри́, не урони́ часы́!

Watch what you're doing -
don't drop your watch!

Смотрите́, не поре́жьтесь!

Watch out -
don't cut yourself!

Due to the nature of this construction, words such as смотри(те) ("watch what you're doing"), осторожно ("be careful"), etc. often appear together with the negated perfective imperative. Although only a very few verbs appear in the negated perfective imperative, you must be aware of the semantic implications of this construction for comprehension. Other than the expression не забудьте... (don't forget...), you should avoid negating the perfective imperative until you know exactly how and with which verbs to use it.

5. Uses of the Imperfective Imperative without Negation

The perfective imperative is normally used to tell someone to do something with emphasis on the result:

Example:

Сделайте это ко вторнику! Get that done by Tuesday!

However, the imperfective imperative is also frequently used without negation to:

- a. request someone to start doing something (often indicating impatience on the part of the speaker):
Я жду. Отвечайте.
Ты, кажется, все прочитал; теперь рассказывай.
- b. request someone to continue an action which has been interrupted or stopped for some reason before its completion:
Почему вы остановились? Читайте дальше.
Вы, кажется, еще не кончили рассказывать. Продолжайте.
- c. indicate that it is time to perform an action:
Уже поздно. Вставай.
Читальный зал закрывается. Сдавайте книги.
- d. indicate a polite invitation, versus a command:
Садитесь, пожалуйста.
Приходите к нам сегодня на обед.

You should have noticed in all the above categories that the speaker is focusing the attention of the listener upon an action itself, rather than upon a result.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. You shouldn't read other people's letters.

2. Don't open fire before dawn!

3. I want you to have a serious talk with him about this.

4. We brought everything that she had asked for.

5. I don't know whose car is parked in my spot.

6. It is essential that everyone arrive on time.

7. She left before you got here.

8. He asked me a question which I was unable to answer.

LESSON IX

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Созда́ние(1) эффе́ктивного противотáнкового(2) ору́жия и ракетной артиллерии застáвило(3) подвѣргнуть танковые войска ряду(4) коренных(5) измене́ний. Большие усовершенствовани́я(6) сделаны(7) не только в констру́кции и воору́жении(8) танков, но и в организа́ции танковых войск.

В настоящее время в танковые соедине́ния(9) входят(10) все рода́(11) назе́мных(12) войск. Это делает танковые войска не только главной уда́рной силой(13) сухопу́тных войск, но и даёт им возможность вести(14) любой вид(15) боя, включа́я(16) оборону.

Каждый танковый полк включает в себя(17) штаб, три танковых батальона и мотострелковый батальон. Для за́щиты от возду́шных(18) атак противника в полку име́ется(19) зени́тная(20) батарея, состоя́щая из взвода зени́тных(22) управляе́мых(23) ракет. Кроме этого, есть рота техни́ческого обслуживания, рота химиче́ской за́щиты и другие подразделе́ния(24).

The _____ (1) of effective _____ (2) and rocket artillery _____ (3) tank forces to undergo a _____ (4) of _____ (5) changes. Great _____ (6) _____ (7) not only in the design and _____ (8) of tanks, but also in the organization of tank troops.

At present all _____ (11) of _____ (12) forces _____ (10) in tank _____ (9). This makes the tank forces not only the main _____ (13) of the ground forces, but also gives them the capability to _____ (14) any _____ (15) of battle, _____ (16) defense.

Each tank regiment _____ (17) of a headquarters three tank battalions and a motorized rifle battalion. For defense against enemy _____ (18) attacks a regiment _____ (19) an _____ (20) battery, consisting of a platoon of self-propelled _____ (21) guns and a platoon of _____ (23) _____ (22) missiles. In addition, there is a maintenance company, a chemical defense company and other _____ (24).

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. Созд́ание эффе́ктивного противотáнкового ору́жия и раке́тной артилле́рии застáвило подве́ргнуть танковые войска́ ряду́ коренных́ изме́нений.
 - a. Identify the subject and predicate of the sentence.
 - b. Why does the verb застави́ть have the ending -о in the sentence?
 - c. In what case is the word ряду́ in the sentence? Why?
 - d. Give the case of the word ору́жие in the sentence? Explain why.

2. Большо́е усовершенствовáния сделаны́ не только́ в констру́кции и воору́жении танков, но и в организа́ции танковых войск.
 - a. What is the meaning of the но и in the sentence?
 - b. Give the gender, number and case of the word констру́кция in the sentence.

3. В настоя́щее время́ в танковые соедине́ния входят все рода́ назе́мных войск.
 - a. Identify the subject and predicate of the sentence.
 - b. Give the gender, number and case of the word рода́ in the sentence.

4. Это делает танковые войска́ не только́ главной уда́рной силой́ сухопу́тных войск, но и даё́т им возмо́жность вести́ любой́ вид боя́, включа́я оборо́ну.
 - a. Identify the subject and predicate of the sentence.
 - b. To which word does the word им refer?
 - c. What part of speech is the word включа́я?

5. Каждый танковый полк включает в себя штаб, три танковых батальона и мотострелковый батальон.
- Give the subject and predicate of the sentence.
 - In what case is the word штаб in the sentence?
6. Для защиты от воздушных атак противника в полку имеется зенитная батарея, состоящая из взвода зенитных самоходных установок и взвода зенитных управляемых ракет.
- Identify the subject and predicate of the sentence.
 - What part of speech is the word состоящий in the sentence?
 - What part of speech is the word управляемый in the sentence? Is it active or passive?
7. Кроме этого, есть рота технического обслуживания, рота химической защиты и другие подразделения.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What is the predicate?
 - What secondary parts of the sentence are the words химический and защита?
 - With what word does the adjective химический grammatically agree in the sentence?

LESSON X

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. EXPRESSING SHADES OF MEANING BY PREFIXATION

As you know, prefixes added to going verbs further define and specify the meaning of the given verb.

Examples:

Мы уехали в 3.00.

We left at 3:00.

Он выехал из гаража и уехал.

He drove out of the garage and drove away.

Мы сейчас подъезжаем к Донецку.

We are approaching Donetsk.

Он дошел до угла и пошел налево.

He reached the corner and went to the left.

Она уходит на работу в 6.00 и приходит домой в 5.30.

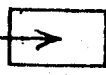








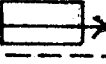
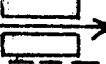
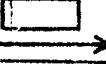
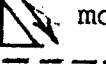

She leaves for work at 6:00 and comes home at 5:30.

Они съехали с дороги и остановились.

They drove off the road and stopped.

In Phase II you learned the meanings of the following prefixes with going verbs:

в, вы, до, за, от, пере, под, при, про, с, and у.

RUSSIAN PREFIXES	USED TO EXPRESS	EXAMPLES
В-	 motion into	<u>в</u> ходить <u>в</u> { комнату класс
ВЫ-	 motion out of	<u>вы</u> ходить <u>из</u> { комнаты класса
ПРИ-	 arriving bringing	<u>при</u> ходить <u>в</u> { клуб школу <u>при</u> носить { книгу словарь
У-	 departing taking away	<u>у</u> ходить <u>из</u> { клуба школы <u>у</u> носить { книгу словарь
ПОД-	 approach	<u>под</u> ходить <u>к</u> { доске окну
ОТ-	 movement away taking away	<u>от</u> ходить <u>от</u> { доски окна <u>от</u> носить { книгу словарь
ПЕРЕ-	 movement across	<u>пере</u> ходить (<u>через</u>) { улицу мост
ДО-	 reaching a destination	<u>до</u> ехать <u>до</u> { города деревни
ЗА-	 motion to a place for a short visit	<u>за</u> йти { <u>в</u> библиотеку <u>на</u> почту <u>к</u> учителю <u>за</u> ехать <u>за</u> { книгой девушкой
ПРО-	 motion through	<u>про</u> ходить <u>через</u> { парк болото
	 motion in between	<u>про</u> ходить <u>между</u> машиной и грузовиком
	 motion past	<u>про</u> ходить <u>мимо</u> { школы ресторана
С-	 motion down	<u>с</u> ходить { <u>с</u> горы <u>по</u> лестнице
	 motion off	<u>с</u> езжать <u>с</u> дороги

One new prefix: об



1. Мы обошли вокруг здания. We walked all the way around the building.
2. Мы обошли город с юга. We skirted the city to the south
3. Мы обошли все магазины в городе. We went around to all the stores in town.

B. SPECIAL MEANING OF THE PREFIXES ЗА-, ПРО- AND ПО- (PERFECTIVES)

1. The prefix за- in the perfective aspect often denotes the beginning (or starting point) of an action:

Он вдруг засмеялся. He suddenly began laughing.

Among the more common verbs of this type are:

болеть — to be ill
заболеть — to become ill, to get sick

смеяться — to laugh
засмеяться — to start laughing, to begin to laugh

кричать — to yell; to shout; to scream
закричать — to start yelling/shouting/screaming; to shout out.

плакать — to cry, to sob
заплакать — to start crying, to break into tears

курить — to smoke
закурить — to begin smoking, to light up (a cigarette, cigar, etc.)

2. The prefix по- in the perfective aspect often has two special usages:

- a. with basic going verbs the prefixed verb по- (the basic perfective) concentrates the attention of the listener on the beginning of the motion (similar to the prefix за- with many other verbs).

Он встал и пошёл к выходу.
He got up and went toward the exit.

Мы поедем в 14.15.
We will head out at 1415.

Он дошёл до угла и побежал направо.
He reached the corner and ran off to the right.

- b. With many verbs the prefix по- forms a so-called "perfective of limited duration". This happens frequently with verbs whose meanings do not lend themselves to a "true" perfective, since they imply processes whose results are not easily stated:

Посиди ещё немного. - Stay (sit) a while longer.

Я постою здесь немного, покурю и подожду тебя.
I'll stay here for a while, have a smoke and wait for you.

Я хочу немного поспать. - I want to take a nap.

Other similar verbs:

полежать, поиграть, подумать, потанцевать, погулять, позаниматься (to study for a little while), etc.

Note the idiomatic expression using the perfective past of идти, ехать:

Пошли! (Поехали!) - Let's go!

3. The prefix про- in the perfective aspect of certain verbs (other than going verbs) often indicates a prolonged action occurring over a definite period of time.

Мы простояли 3 часа в очереди.
We stood in line for three hours.

Я пробыл 10 лет в Москве.
I lived 10 years in Moscow.

Note that, with such verbs, there must be a time phrase indicating a specific period of time.

Other examples:

проработать (5 лет, всё утро, etc.)
просидеть (весь вечер, целое утро, 2 часа, etc.)
пролежать (весь день, 3 часа, etc.)
прослужить (10 лет, всё это время, etc.)

Note, however: проиграть (perfective) also means "to lose" (a game, a battle, etc.)

C. SPECIAL MEANINGS WITH THE PREFIXES ПРИ- AND ЗА-

With the prefixes при- and за- in the meanings of coming or dropping in to see someone, note the subtle difference in aspect.

К тебе кто-то <u>заходил</u> .	Someone came to see you. (but he/she left and is not here now)
К тебе кто-то <u>зашёл</u> .	Someone has come to see you. (and he/she is <u>still</u> here)
Ко мне <u>приезжал</u> брат.	My brother came to see me. (and he has <u>already left</u>)
Ко мне <u>приехал</u> брат.	My brother <u>is visiting</u> me. (he's <u>still</u> here, at my place)

Note that, as with the past tense of the indefinite imperfective in the meaning of a round trip, these constructions in the imperfective can be replaced by быть.

Я ходил на почту. = Я был на почте.

Many prefixes can also be added to non-motion verbs, also changing the meaning or further specifying it. Recall the examples with the verb писать.

Prefix	Resulting Verb	Meaning
В	<u>ВПИСЫВАТЬ</u> ВПИСАТЬ	to write <u>in</u> ; to enter (information, etc.)
ВЫ	<u>ВЫПИСЫВАТЬ</u> ВЫПИСАТЬ	1. to copy <u>out</u> (of); to extract (information) 2. to subscribe to (a publication)
ДО	<u>ДОПИСЫВАТЬ</u> ДОПИСАТЬ	to <u>finish</u> writing; to write (something) <u>to the end</u>
ПОД	<u>ПОДПИСЫВАТЬ</u> ПОДПИСАТЬ	to sign (literally: to write one's name <u>underneath</u> a text)
пере	<u>ПЕРЕПИСЫВАТЬ</u> ПЕРЕПИСАТЬ	to write over; to write <u>again</u> ; to <u>re</u> -write
за	<u>ЗАПИСЫВАТЬ</u> ЗАПИСАТЬ	to write <u>down</u> ; to jot down
с	<u>СПИСЫВАТЬ</u> СПИСАТЬ	1. to copy from 2. to cheat

Active formation and use of the various prefixes on verbs other than going verbs is beyond the scope of a basic course. It is important, however, for you to be aware of this phenomenon and to recognize the root verbs when attempting to comprehend such verbs in context.

E. SPECIAL MEANING OF GOING VERBS

Several basic going verbs have certain "special" meanings as illustrated in the following chart:

Verb	Special Meaning	Examples
вести (imp. only)	to conduct (abstract)	<p><u>вести огонь</u> - to conduct fire (military); to fire upon. Приказали вести огонь по танкам противника.</p> <p><u>вести переговоры</u> - to conduct negotiations. Мы ведём переговоры с представителями СССР.</p> <p><u>вести наблюдение</u> - to conduct observation. Ведите наблюдение за квадратом 2456!</p>
идти (imp. only)	<p>1. to run (mechanical)</p> <p>2. to be in progress, to be going on.</p>	<p>1. Эти часы идут точно.</p> <p>2. Сейчас идёт собрание. Дела идут хорошо. Всё идёт по плану. Идёт дождь (снег и т.д.) Время идёт медленно.</p>
<u>везти</u> <u>повезти</u> (used im- per- sonal- ly)	to be lucky; to have good luck.	<p>Ему всегда везёт. - He's always lucky.</p> <p>Мне очень повезло. - I was very lucky.</p> <p>Ей просто не повезло. - She simply had some bad luck.</p>
носить (imp. only)	to wear (clothing) (habitually, often, as a rule)	<p>Она всегда носит тёмные платья.</p> <p>Он часто носит этот костюм.</p>

Note also the following expressions:

Водить/вести машину (грузовик, автобус и т.д.) - to drive (a vehicle); Кто тогда вёл машину? - Who was driving the car at that time?

вести себя - to behave; Он плохо себя вёл. - He behaved badly.

нести/понести потери - to suffer casualties (mil.); Несём тяжёлые потери. - We are suffering heavy casualties.

Время $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{летит.} \\ \text{бежит.} \end{array} \right.$ - Time flies. Time's a-wasting.

Это тебе очень идёт. - That looks good on you.

F. SPECIAL MEANINGS OF PREFIXED GOING VERBS

As with the basic going verbs, certain prefixed going verbs convey "special" meanings:

Verb	Special Meanings	Examples
<u>ВЫХОДИТЬ</u> ВЫЙТИ	1. to show a result; to end up (as); to turn out.	1. Вышло не очень хорошо. Things didn't turn out very well.
переносить (imp. only)	to endure, to "stand".	Он не переносит боли. He can't stand pain. Я его не переношú. I can't stand him.
<u>ПРОХОДИТЬ</u> ПРОЙТИ	1. to cover (a certain distance) 2. to pass (with time expressions) 3. to stop; to pass.	1. Мы прошли 2 километра за час. We covered 2 kilometers in an hour. 2. Прошло 3 часа. Three hours passed. 3. Дождь прошёл. The rain stopped.

<u>проезжать</u> <u>проехать</u>	to miss (a stop, station)	Я проехал мою остановку. I missed my stop.
<u>проводить</u> <u>провести</u>	1. to conduct (= вести) 2. to spend (a certain amount of time)	1. Он очень плохо провёл этот урок. He conducted the class very badly. 2. В прошлом году я провёл 2 недели в Москве. Last year I spent 2 weeks in Moscow.
<u>сводить</u> <u>свести</u> с ума	to drive someone crazy	Он меня сводит с ума! He's driving me crazy!
<u>сходить</u> <u>сойти</u> с ума	to go crazy	Ты что, с ума сошла?! What, have you gone nuts?!
<u>подвозить</u> <u>подвезти</u>	to give someone a lift somewhere	Ты едешь на вокзал? Можешь меня подвезти? You're going to the station? Can you give me a lift?

Note also the following expressions:

выход из положения - a way out (of a bad situation)

как туда проехать? - how do I get there?

ничего не вышло - nothing came of it (= no result)

проводить/провести время - to spend time

хорошо проводить/провести время - to have a good time

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. They drove off the road and stopped.

2. We went around to all of the stores in town and still could not find what we were looking for.

3. Jot down her number for me.

4. The order was given to open fire on the enemy tanks.

5. Everything is going according to plan.

6. He can't stand pain.

7. If you are going to the station, can you give me a lift?

8. If she doesn't shut up, I'll go crazy.

LESSON X

Homework II

Section One: Prepositional and Adverbial Constructions of Purpose and Use

Conversational Russian employs certain prepositional phrases and adverbial constructions to indicate the purpose or use of something:

Examples

У вас есть что-нибудь от
кашля?

- Do you have something for a
cough?

У тебя есть куда яблоки
положить?

- Do you have something to put
the apples in?

Дай чем писать.

- Give me something to write with.

У вас есть чем открыть эту
бутылку?

- Do you have something to open
this bottle with?

Section Two: Exercises

Упражнение №1. Practice Dictation

You will hear 7 sentences read twice at normal conversational speed. There will be a 5 second pause between readings and then a 20 second pause to write down each sentence.

1.

2.

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

Упражнение №2. Information Extraction

Listen to the passage recorded on your cassette and answer the questions pertaining to it. You may replay the tape as many times as necessary.

1. Where did the cruise missile test firing take place?

2. What type of aircraft was used to launch the missile?

3. Where did the test flight originate?

4. Who reported this information?

5. How many such test firings have taken place to date?

6. How many total test firings are planned?

Упражнение №3. Textual Restoration

Restore the text using the words provided in the list below. The words are given in their dictionary forms and must be changed as required by the context. Each word may be used only once. There are extra words in the list. The restored text will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Дорогой Алёша!

_____ твое письмо, я был очень рад
узнать, что ты _____ назначение _____
_____ школу. _____ старый летчик, хочу _____
_____ несколько _____.
Летчик должен знать в _____ всё _____
_____ детали, иначе в _____
ему будет плохо.

Никогда _____
работающему воздушному _____. Многие _____
_____, подойдя
_____ к нему.

Самая _____
 в полете _____ тогда, когда
 пилот не _____ решение.
 В _____ всё _____
 намного быстрее, чем _____ земле.

Знай Алёша, что полеты на _____
 самолетах _____ большого мастерства.

Твой отец

дать	винт	в	близко
разбивать	воздух	до	большой
потерять	голова	к	внимательно
приближаться	ошибка	как	летный
получить	кабина	на	последний
принять	решение	не	постоянный
происходить	скорость	он	слишком
прочитать	совет	по	современный
случаться		ты	
требовать			

LESSON XI

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. REFLEXIVE VERBS

The following chart summarizes the uses of reflexive verbs as presented in Phase II.

FUNCTION OF REFLEXIVE VERB	COMMENTS	EXAMPLES
expressing intransitivity	Some verbs add the <u>-ся</u> reflexive ending to denote intransitivity	<u>останавливать</u> to stop (some- <u>остановить</u> one or some- thing) (transi- tive) <u>останавливаться</u> to stop (in- <u>остановиться</u> transitive)
bringing the action of the verb back onto the subject ("true" reflexivity)	The reflexive ending <u>-ся</u> can serve to bring the action of the verb back onto the subject.	<u>мыть</u> to wash oneself <u>помыть</u> (to wash up) <u>одеваться</u> to dress oneself <u>одеть</u> (to get dressed)

FUNCTION OF REFLEXIVE VERB	COMMENTS	EXAMPLES
expressing reciprocity	The <u>-ся</u> form often indicates that the action of the verb applies to two or more subjects.	<u>ЗНАКОМИТЬСЯ</u> to become acquainted with <u>ПОЗНАКОМИТЬСЯ</u> (each other) <u>ВСТРЕЧАТЬСЯ</u> to meet (each other) <u>ВСТРЕТИТЬСЯ</u>
expressing passivity	The <u>-ся</u> ending is often added to express the passive voice.*	<u>СТРОИТЬСЯ</u> to be built; <u>ПОСТРОИТЬСЯ</u> to be constructed <u>СЧИТАТЬСЯ</u> to be considered
expressing a "reflexive only" verb	Some verbs exist only with the <u>-ся</u> ending and never appear without it.	<u>БОЯТЬСЯ</u> to fear; to be afraid (of) <u>ОСТАВАТЬСЯ</u> to stay; to remain <u>ОСТАТЬСЯ</u> <u>СТАРАТЬСЯ</u> to try; <u>ПОСТАРАТЬСЯ</u> to attempt

B. OTHER USES OF REFLEXIVE VERBS

Reflexive verbs have certain additional uses in Russian:

1. Impersonal Constructions

Some verbs (even some intransitive verbs) add the -ся ending to indicate an action somehow independent of the will of the actor. These impersonal constructions often consist of an implied subject in the dative case* and the third person singular reflexive form of the verb:

Examples:

Мне не спится. - I can't get to sleep.

Мне кажется, что ты неправ. - I think you're wrong.

Как вам живётся? - How's life?

Ему сегодня не пишется. - He doesn't feel like writing
today.

Ей не хочется работать сегодня.** - She doesn't feel like
working today.

* Such constructions may appear without reference to an implied subject. Example:

Здесь хорошо работается. - It's nice working here.

** The active construction with хотеть denotes a stronger feeling. Compare:

Мне не хочется идти туда. - I don't feel like going there.

Я не хочу идти туда. - I don't want to go there.

2. General Characteristic Reflexives

A reflexive verb can also sometimes reflect a general characteristic of the subject. Compare:

Собака кусает мальчика. - The dog is biting the boy.

Эта собака кусается. - That dog bites.

Он рвёт бумагу. - He is tearing up a piece of paper.

Бумага легко рвётся. - Paper tears easily.

3. Intensification Reflexives

Some reflexive verbs (even those formed from certain intransitive verbs) express a high degree or an intensification of the action implied by the verb, often without a significant change in meaning. Compare:

Он плачет. - He is crying

Он часто плачется. - He often complains.

Кто-то стучит в дверь. - Someone is knocking at the door.

Кто-то стучится в дверь. - Someone is banging on the door.

Он не может решить, ехать или нет. - He can't decide
whether to go.

Он не может решится. - He just can't make up his mind.

Он ругает сына. - He is chewing out his son.

Он часто ругается. - He swears (curses) a lot.

C. PREFIXATION

Certain prefixes combine with the reflexive ending -ся to convey special meanings to many verbs. There are no hard and fast rules governing this linguistic feature, but the following reference chart summarizes some of the more frequent uses of these combinations.

Prefix used with <u>-ся</u>	Type of meaning resulting	Examples of resulting verb	Examples of usage
вы	a successful conclusion to an action; achieving a desirable result.	<u>вы́спаться</u> (PERF only)	Я хорошо <u>вы́спался</u> . I had a <u>good sleep</u> . (got enough sleep)
на	to do something to satiation or to excess.	<u>напива́ться</u> <u>напиться</u>	Я вчера здо́рово <u>напи́лся</u> . I really <u>got smashed</u> yesterday.
до	attainment of a goal; achieving a planned result.	<u>догова́риваться</u> <u>договориться</u>	Мы уже <u>договори́лись</u> . We've already <u>reached an agreement</u> .
пере	exchange (reciprocal action)	<u>перепи́сываться</u> (IMP only)	Мы уже <u>перепи́сываемся</u> 2 года. We've been <u>corresponding</u> (writing to each other) for 2 years.
раз (рас)	diffusion; dispersion; going apart	<u>расходи́ться</u> <u>разойтись</u>	Солдаты <u>разошлись</u> . The soldiers <u>dispersed</u> (went their separate ways).
с	together (reciprocal); coming together	<u>сходи́ться</u> <u>сойтись</u>	Наши вкусы начи- нают <u>сходи́ться</u> . Our tastes are starting <u>to come together</u> (become closer).

Again, active formation and use of these combinations is beyond the scope of a basic course. These forms are presented only to show you that they exist. Again, when you encounter them, identify the root form for comprehension of basic meaning, then consult your dictionary.

Many prefixed verbs with the reflexive ending -ся do not belong to the above category. They are either verbs with completely different meanings, or simply perfective forms of basic reflexive verbs.

Examples:

ругаться
выругаться

to swear; to curse

перестараться (PERF only)

to try too hard; to overdo it

разбираться
разобраться (в чем-нибудь)

to understand (something);
to have a thorough understanding
of

собираться
собраться

1. to gather together; to assemble (intransitive)
2. to intend (to do something)

D. EXPRESSING HYPOTHESES

There are two kinds of conditions that may require the use of the hypothetical mood:

- one expressing a possible or real condition;
- one expressing an unreal or contrary to fact condition.

A hypothetical construction consists of a principal clause and a subordinate clause. The subordinate clause formulates the condition on which the action or state of of the principal clause depends.

1. Real Conditions

A possible or real condition expresses a state, condition, or action which is actual or possible (even if improbable) in the present, past or future tenses. The table below presents the construction for expressing a real condition.

Subordinate Clause		Principal Clause
	present tense verb	present tense verb
Если +	past tense verb	, (To) past tense verb
	future tense verb	future tense verb

Если он работает, (то) он дома.

Если он работал, (то) он был дома.

Если он будет работать, (то) он будет дома.

2. Contrary to Fact Conditions

Conditions contrary to fact are expressed by one form for all three tenses. The verb in both clauses is in the past tense and the particle "бы" follows если in the condition and the verb in the conclusion.

Subordinate Clause		Principal Clause
Если + бы +	past tense verb	, (то) + past tense verb + бы

Если бы он работал, (то) он был бы дома.

Another construction expressing a condition contrary to fact is to replace the если + бы + past tense of the subordinate clause with the 2nd person singular imperfective of the verb. This construction is particularly likely in conversation or informal prose.

Subordinate Clause

Principal Clause

Если бы я был президентом,

(то) я знал бы, что делать.

Будь я президентом,

3. Expressing the idea of "but for ..."

Russian expresses the condition "but for" with two constructions:

Если + бы + Nominative

Если бы не вы,

(то) мы проиграла бы игру.

не будь + Genitive

не будь вас,

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. I really got drunk yesterday.

2. She hasn't changed at all over the years.

3. That which everyone was afraid of happened.

4. He will not agree under any circumstances.

5. As soon as he saw her he fell in love.

6. If he were to say that to me, I would know how to answer him.

7. No matter how much it may cost, we must return home immediately.

8. But for your help, she would have been late.

LESSON XI

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Военно-Воздушные Силы(1) (ВВС) СССР состоят из(2) фронт-вой, дальней и военно-транспортной(3) авиации. Для выполне-ния(4) своих задач(5) они имеют самолёты различного(6) назначения(7): истребители, истребители-бомбардировщики, бомбардировщики, разведчики(8), транспортные(9) и другие самолёты, а также вертолёты.

Самолёты-ракетоносцы дальней авиации способны(10) совер-шать(11) межконтинентальные полёты(12) и своими ракетами поражать цели(13), не входя(14) в зону поражения противовоздушной обороны(15) противника.

Самолёты фронтвой авиации тесно(16) взаимодействуют с Сухопутными(17) войсками(18). Сверхзвуковые истребители фронтвой авиации могут действовать на различных(19) высотах(20) почти от земли до стратосферы(21). Теперь начинают принимать на вооружение истребители вертикального(22) взлёта(23) и посадки(24).

Самолёты военно-транспортной(25) авиации способны(26) перебрасывать по(27) воздуху не только войска(28), но и тяжёлую боевую технику(29), включая(30) бронетранспортёры и танки.

The Soviet _____ (1) _____ (2) the Tactical Aviation, the Long-Range Aviation and the _____ (3) Aviation. They have aircraft for _____ (6) _____ (7) _____ (4) their _____ (5): fighters, fighter-bombers, bombers, _____ (8) (aircraft), _____ (9) (aircraft), and other airplanes, as well as helicopters.

The missile-armed aircraft of the Long-Range Aviation _____ (10) of _____ (11) intercontinental _____ (12) and destroying _____ (13) with their missiles _____ (14) the enemy's _____ (15) kill zone.

Tactical Aviation aircraft act in _____ (16) cooperation with the _____ (17) _____ (18). Tactical Aviation supersonic fighters can operate at _____ (19) _____ (20), from just above the surface (all the way) to the _____ (21). At present, _____ (22) _____ (23) and _____ (24) (VTOL) fighters have begun to be deployed.

_____ (25) Aviation aircraft _____ (26) of transporting _____ (27) air not only _____ (28), but also heavy military _____ (29), _____ (30) APC's and tanks.

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. Военно-Воздушные Силы (ВВС) СССР состоят из фронтовой, дальней и военно-транспортной авиации.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. Explain the meaning of the preposition из.
 - d. What is the complete form of the word fragment военно- ?
 - e. Give the gender, number and case of the word авиация in the sentence.
 - f. Why is the word авиация singular in the sentence?

2. Для выполнения своих задач они имеют самолёты различного назначения: истребители, истребители-бомбардировщики, бомбардировщики, разведчики, транспортные и другие самолёты, а также вертолёт.
 - a. What is the subject?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. Which words do the words beginning with истребители refer to?
 - d. In what case is the word задача in the sentence? Why?

3. Самолёты-ракетоносцы дальней авиации способны совершать межконтинентальные полёты и своими ракетами поражать цели, не входя в зону поражения противовоздушной обороны противника.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. Which word does the word ракетоносцы refer to in the sentence?

- d. From what two Russian words is the word ракетно́сец formed?
- e. Why is the word ракеты in the instrumental case?
- f. Explain the grammatical form входя in the sentence.
4. Самолёты фронтовой авиации тесно взаимодействуют с Сухопутными войсками.
- a. What is the subject of the sentence?
- b. In what case is the word авиация in the sentence? Why?
- c. What secondary part of the sentence is the word тесно?
5. Сверхзвуковые истребители фронтовой авиации могут действовать на различных высотах почти от земли до стратосферы.
- a. What is the predicate of the sentence?
- b. What meaning does a word acquire when it is combined with the word сверх?
- c. In what case is the word высота in the sentence? Why?
6. Теперь начинают принимать на вооружение истребители вертикального взлёта и посадки.
- a. Is this a personal or impersonal sentence?
- b. What is the predicate of the sentence?
- c. In what case are the words взлёт and посадка in the sentence? Why?

7. Самолёты военно-транспортной авиации способны перебрасывать по воздуху не только войска, но и тяжёлую боевую технику, включая бронетранспортёры и танки.

b. What is the subject?

c. Explain the form of the adjective способный. What does it agree with?

d. Why does the word воздух have the ending -у in the sentence?

e. In what case is the word войска in the sentence? Why?

f. Explain the grammatical form включая in the sentence.

LESSON XII

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. PECULIARITIES IN THE RUSSIAN VERBAL SYSTEM

The Russian verbal system contains a number of obstacles to listening and reading comprehension. Read the following sentence in Russian.

Что ты там бормочешь?

Not knowing the verb, you might begin to look for its meaning in the dictionary. Unfortunately, you will not find the verb spelled this way, since there is no such verb as "бормочеть," or "бормочить," or "бормочь," or "бормочать," etc. In order to find this (or any) verb in the dictionary, you must be able to determine its infinitive, since this is the form in which verbs appear in the dictionary.

Fortunately, these spelling changes (called consonant mutations) usually follow certain basic patterns.

B. CONSONANT MUTATION

Patterns of standard consonant mutations:

Consonant preceding infinitival ending	Changes to	Consonant preceding Conjugational ending
з; д	→	ж
к; т	→	ч
с	→	ш
ст	→	щ

You will note that when these consonant mutations occur in first conjugation verbs, they remain throughout the conjugation. With second conjugation verbs only the first person singular changes.¹

Mutation	First conjugation	Second conjugation
з (д) → ж	сказать скаж <u>у́</u> , скаж <u>е</u> шь, скаж <u>у</u> т	возить вож <u>у́</u> , вóзишь, вóзят ходить хож <u>у́</u> , хóдишь, хóдят
к (т) → ч	пла́кать плач <u>у́</u> ² , плач <u>е</u> шь, плач <u>у</u> т шептáть шепч <u>у́</u> , шепч <u>е</u> шь, шепч <u>у</u> т	плати́ть плач <u>у́</u> ² , платишь, платят
с → ш	писать пиш <u>у́</u> , пиш <u>е</u> шь, пиш <u>у</u> т	бросить брош <u>у́</u> , брошишь, бросят
ст → щ	блестéть блещ <u>у́</u> , блещ <u>е</u> шь, блещ <u>у</u> т	чи́стить чищ <u>у́</u> , чи́стишь, чи́стят

1. The past passive participle is also affected in most second conjugation verbs:

почи́стить - почи́щен
возврати́ть - возврати́чен
бро́сить - бро́шен

освободи́ть - освободи́чен
выплати́ть - выплати́чен

2. Note the importance of knowing the proper stress:

Я плачу́ I am paying
Я пла́чу I am crying

C. INSERTED CONSONANTS

Some verbs insert the consonant л between the consonant preceding the infinitival ending and the conjugational ending of the first person singular. The л then drops out throughout the remainder of the conjugation of second-conjugation verbs, but remains throughout the conjugation of first-conjugation verbs.

Я куплю эту книгу завтра.

Я ловлю рыбу в этом озере.

This occurs in some verbs whose stems end in б, в, м, п, or ф. Examples:

любить - Я люблю

I love, I like

колебаться - Я колеблюсь

I am hesitating (Он колеблется, etc.)

нравиться - Я ей нравлюсь.

She likes me.

отправить - Я ему отправлю посылку.

I'll send him the parcel.

накормить - Я сейчас накормлю собаку.

I'm going to feed the dog now.

дремать - Я часто дремлю в классе.

I often doze in class. (Он дремлет, etc.)

купить - Я куплю себе новую машину.

I'm going to buy a new car.

These consonant changes often hinder student's ability to find unknown verbs in the dictionary. Recognition of the most frequently occurring patterns are essential to determining the infinitive and thus being able to find the word in the dictionary.

D. PECULIARITIES IN THE RUSSIAN VERBAL SYSTEM

Since verbs appear in the dictionary in their infinitive forms, the following conjugational systems present difficulties when encountering new verbs in their inflected forms.

1. Verbs ending in -овать:Example: командовать

я <u>командую</u>	мы <u>командуем</u>
ты <u>командуешь</u>	вы <u>командуете</u>
он <u>командует</u>	они <u>командуют</u>

Stressed endings

Example: ковать

я <u>кую</u>	мы <u>куём</u>
ты <u>куешь</u>	вы <u>куёте</u>
он <u>куёт</u>	они <u>куют</u>

2. Verbs ending in -еватьExample: воевать

я <u>воюю</u>	мы <u>воюем</u>
ты <u>воюешь</u>	вы <u>воюете</u>
он <u>воюет</u>	они <u>воюют</u>

Stressed endings

Example: плевать

я <u>плюю</u>	мы <u>плюём</u>
ты <u>плюешь</u>	вы <u>плюёте</u>
он <u>плюёт</u>	они <u>плюют</u>

Exceptions:

одевать - я одеваю, ты одеваешь, они одевают.

успевать - я успеваю, ты успеваешь, они успевают

3. Verbs ending in -авать*:Example: отставать

я <u>отстаю</u>	мы <u>отстаём</u>
ты <u>отстаёшь</u>	вы <u>отстаёте</u>
он <u>отстаёт</u>	они <u>отстают</u>

Exception: плавать - я плаваю, ты плаваешь, они плавают

*The imperatives, verbal adverbs (imperfective), and present passive participles of these verbs retain the -ав- infix:

Examples: не отставайте (imperative)
 передавая (verbal adverb)
 передаваемый (present passive participle)

4. Verbs ending in -ать but conjugating like -ить verbs:

In addition to those with consonant mutations (e.g. иска́ть; пла́кать, etc.) another problem arises with some verbs ending in -ать. They appear to be regular first conjugation verbs (like чита́ть), but they in fact conjugate like second conjugation verbs (like говори́ть). In attempting to find their infinitives, students often look under -ить and cannot find the verb in the dictionary. Quite often a sibilant (ч, ж, ш, щ) will precede the -ать.

Example: крича́ть

я кричу́*	мы кричи́м
ты кричи́шь	вы кричи́те
он кричи́т	они крича́т*

(Note the effect of the spelling rule: ю and я cannot be written after sibilants, but у and а appear instead.)

5. Irregular Imperatives

Some imperatives end in -ь(те) rather than the usual -ай(те) or -и(те) forms. This usually occurs in the -ить type (second conjugation verbs) whose endings in the conjugated forms are not stressed in any of the persons.

Example: поста́вить

Imperatives: поста́вь; поста́вьте

(note the stress pattern of the conjugation:

я поста́влю	мы поста́вим
ты поста́вишь	вы поста́вите
он поста́вит	они поста́вят)

Exception: If there are two consonants preceding the infinitival ending, the imperative will be -и(те) and not -ь(те):

уменьши́ть	- (imperative)	уменьши́те
запо́мнить	- (imperative)	запо́мните

6. Insertion of Vowels

Some verbs insert a vowel in the conjugated forms. Quite often the inserted vowel is o. This vowel does not appear in the infinitive.

Examples: <u>гнать*</u>		<u>стереть</u>	
я <u>го</u> ню́	мы <u>го</u> ним	я <u>со</u> тру́	мы <u>со</u> трём
ты <u>го</u> нишь	вы <u>го</u> ните	ты <u>со</u> трёшь	вы <u>со</u> трёте
он <u>го</u> нит	они <u>го</u> нят	он <u>со</u> трёт	они <u>со</u> трут

(*Note: This verb not only inserts the vowel o, but it is also a second conjugation verb, not a regular first conjugation verb like читать.)

This insertion of the vowel o also occurs in prefixation of the verb идти. In addition to the insertion of o, the и becomes й and the д drops.

<u>Prefix</u>	<u>Root Verb</u>	<u>Prefix Verb</u>
под-		подойти
от-	идти	отойти
с-		сойти

7. Vowel Mutation

In addition to vowel insertion, certain vowels change during conjugation:

Examples:	зак <u>ры</u> ть	пе <u>т</u> ть
	я зак <u>ро</u> ю	я по <u>ю</u>
	ты зак <u>ро</u> ешь	ты по <u>ё</u> шь
	они зак <u>ро</u> ют	они по <u>ю</u> т

8. Irregular Past Tense

In addition to those verbs whose past tense is completely irregular (e.g. идти - шёл), various spelling changes occur:

Examples: a) consonant changes

мочь - он мог
 вести - он вел

b) shortened past tenses

привыкнуть - он привик
 умереть - он умер
 погибать - он погиб

E. WORKING AIDS

As you have seen, there are many irregularities in the verbal system of Russian. As previously mentioned, these are too numerous to be exhaustively dealt with in a basic course. It is, however, important for you to realize that they exist and to be ready to deal with them when working with spoken or written passages of authentic Russian. Certain working aids are available to assist you in finding the meaning of unfamiliar verbs having irregularities. Among these are:

1. Обратный словарь русского языка

The Soviets publish this "Reverse Dictionary" which is arranged in "reverse" alphabetical order, that is beginning with words ending in а and ending with words ending in я. This working aid will help you find an unfamiliar verb by concentrating on the ending. For example, if you have identified a verb which you think ends in -овать, you turn to the section of words ending in -ь and you will find an entire alphabetized list of verbs ending in -овать.

2. Орфографический словарь русского языка

Moscow also publishes the "Orthographic Dictionary" in which you will find over 100,000 words. Each word's inflected forms are given. Thus, if you are unsure as to the conjugation (past tense, etc.) of a verb, you can look it up and this reference work will show you all the inflected forms. This is especially useful in identifying spelling irregularities (such as consonant mutations, vowel changes, etc.).

3. Большой англо-русский словарь

This English-Russian dictionary is useful when you think you have identified a word by its meaning in a particular context. You should look up the English meaning and check the list of Russian equivalents provided. Then use other working aids (such as the Orthographic Dictionary) to double check on the inflected form in which the word appears in the passage you are listening to or reading.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. All books must be returned on time.

2. Next year they will sell their house and move to their son's place.

3. I don't want to go, I'm tired enough as it is.

4. Has he lost at cards again? Yes, he often loses nowadays.

5. Wherever you are, behave yourself properly.

6. Let's sit down at the table and have a bite to eat.

7. Who was complaining about a headache?

8. She lost a lot of weight because of her illness.

LESSON XII

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension

Упражнение №1. Listen to the recording and restore all the missing elements.

На _____ 1 _____ 2 _____ страны
_____ 3 _____ 4 _____ неделю _____ 5 _____
погода _____ 6 _____ 7 _____ в _____ 8 _____
её районах. Вся _____ 9 _____ 10 _____
_____ 11 _____ 12 _____ будет находиться
_____ 13 _____ 14 _____ под _____ 15 _____
_____ 16 _____ 17 _____ 18 _____,
который _____ 19 _____ 20 _____ почти
_____ 21 _____ недели _____ 22 _____ 23 _____
_____ 24 _____ 25 _____ 26 _____
_____ 27 _____ температуру.

Упражнение №2. Answer the following questions pertaining to the preceding passage.

1. What is the case of the word #1?

2. What does word #4 mean?

3. What does word #7 mean? What part of speech is it?

4. What do words #13 and #14 mean?

5. What is the case of word #15?

6. What does word #22 mean?

7. Does the passage mention the average temperature for the week?

8. How should the inhabitants of the western part of the USSR dress during the coming week?

Section Two: Preparation of Oral Reports

Select a news item on any subject from a media source (radio, TV, press). Prepare a three minute talk on that item to be presented in Russian during the Comprehension/Communication hour. Be sure to include the essential elements of information: who, what when, where and why.

You may use notes but do not read your talk. Be prepared to answer questions asked by your instructor and classmates.

LESSON XIII

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. THE NUMERAL "ONE"

1. In the nominative case, the numeral "one" has four basic forms (which are followed by the noun in the nominative case.)

masc.	один батальон	one battalion
fem.	одна рота	one company
neut.	одно исключение	one exception
pl.	одни часы	one watch (used with some nouns which do not have a singular form)

(also compounds such as: двадцать одна книга, etc.)

2. With the numeral "one" (and compounds ending with the whole number "one") the adjective and noun agree in gender, number and case.

Examples:

Fem. sing. nom.

В нашем классе одна новая студентка.

Masc. sing. gen.

У одного нового студента есть такая машина.

Neut. sing. dat.

Мы подъезжаем к одному большому озеру.

Fem. sing. acc.

Я читал одну интересную книгу.

Masc. sing. acc. (animate)

Здесь я знаю только одного хорошего врача.

Nominative:

Там	{	был один советский батальон. (M)
		была одна советская рота. (F)
		было одно советское подразделение. (N)

Genitive:

Там не было ни	{	одного советского батальона. (M)
		одной советской роты. (F)
		одного советского подразделения. (N)

Dative:

Я подошёл к	{	одному старому человеку. (M)
		одной красивой девушке. (F)
		одному глубокому озеру. (N)

Accusative:

	<u>Inanimate</u>		<u>Animate</u>
Я вижу	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> один большой стол. (M) одну старую лампу. (F) одно красивое озеро. (N) 	Я знаю	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> одного хорошего врача. (M) одну хорошую медсестру. (F)

NOTE: With animate nouns only the last number of a compound numeral ending in "one" changes to its animate form in the accusative case:

Simple: Я знаю одного советского офицера.

Compound: Я знаю двадцать одного советского офицера.

Instrumental:

Мы летали над	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> одним большим лесом. (M) одной большой деревней. (F) одним большим озером. (N)
---------------	--

Prep/Loc:

Мы купались в	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> одном маленьком бассейне. (M) одной широкой реке. (F) одном глубоком озере. (N)
---------------	---

B. THE NUMERAL "TWO"

1. In the nominative case, the numeral "two" has two basic forms:

masc.	два батальона	two battalions
fem.	две роты	two companies

Note also that when the numerals два (две), три and четыре are themselves in the nominative case, the noun which follows them are in the genitive singular. This also applies to compound numerals ending in these numbers:

два солдата	two soldiers
три роты	three companies
четыре офицера	four officers
двадцать два танка	22 tanks
тридцать две коробки	32 boxes
сорок три года	43 years
пятьдесят четыре доллара	54 dollars

2. When the numbers два (две), три, and четыре (and compounds ending in them) are themselves in the nominative case, the adjectives will be in the genitive plural.

Examples:

	два длинных стола.	(M)
Там	три пустых комнаты.	(F)
	четыре свободных места.	(N)

This construction applies also to compound numbers ending in два, три and четыре:

Там	двадцать два новых банка.	(M)
Там	тридцать три новых книги.	(F)
	сорок четыре разбитых окна.	(N)

NOTE: With feminine nouns, the following construction is possible after две, три, and четыре:

две большие двери = две больших двери

C. THE NUMERALS "TWO", "THREE", AND "FOUR"

1. When the numerals два, три, and четыре are in the genitive, dative, instrumental or prepositional/locative, the adjectives and nouns following them are plural and agree in case:

Genitive: Как насчёт этих двух новых студентов?

Dative: Оружие выдано всем двадцати трём новым солдатам.

Instrumental: Я познакомился с четырьмя немецкими офицерами.

Prep/Loc: Он учился в трёх разных военных училищах.

2. The numbers два две, три and четыре assume the forms двух, трёх and четырёх (the same as the genitive) when they appear in the accusative case with animate nouns. The adjectives and nouns follow in their animate accusatives plural forms (the same as the genitive plural):

Inanimate Accusative

Я вижу два больших словаря.
 Я вижу три маленьких комнаты.
 Я вижу четыре больших окна.

Animate Accusative

Я вижу двух новых студентов.
 Я вижу трёх английских медсестёр.
 Я вижу четырёх советских офицеров.

This applies only to the numerals два (две), три, and четыре and not to compounds ending in them:

Я знаю двух советских офицеров.

But: Я знаю двадцать два советских офицера.

Я вижу трёх молодых студентов.

But: Я вижу тридцать три молодых студента.

D. OTHER NUMERALS (5 AND ABOVE)

With all other numerals five and above (except compounds ending in 1, 2, 3, and 4 as noted), adjectives and nouns agree with these numerals as follows.

1. When the numeral itself is in the nominative or accusative case, both the adjective and the noun are in the genitive plural:

NOM: Там пять новых студентов.

ACC: Я вижу пять новых студентов.

NOM: Здесь восемнадцать новых зданий.

ACC: Я вижу восемнадцать новых зданий.

NOM: В этом городе 27 высоких домов.

ACC: Я вижу 27 высоких домов.

2. When the numeral is in the genitive, dative, instrumental or prepositional/locative case, the adjective and the noun are plural and in the same case:

GEN: Я меня нет пятидесяти немецких марок.

DAT: Раздайте книги этим сорока пяти новым студентам.

INSTR: Переводя эту статью, он пользовался семью разными словарями.

PREP/LOC: Снаряды доставили на двадцати транспортных самолётах.

APPENDIX

REFERENCE CHARTS - CARDINAL NUMBERS

Declension of один, одна, одно

The numeral один acts as an adjective. It agrees with the noun to which it refers in gender, number, and case. Один (одна, одно) is declined like the word этот (эта, это).

	Masculine	Feminine
NOM	<u>один</u> самолёт	<u>одна</u> рота
GEN	<u>одного</u> самолёта	<u>одной</u> роты
DAT	<u>одному</u> самолёту	<u>одной</u> роте
ACC	(inanimate) <u>один</u> самолёт	<u>одну</u> роту
	(animate) <u>одного</u> пилота	<u>одну</u> медсестру
INSTR	<u>одним</u> самолётом	<u>одной</u> ротой
PREP	об <u>одном</u> самолёте	об <u>одной</u> роте

Note that with masculine inanimate nouns the accusative of один is the same as the nominative.

With animate nouns it is the same as the genitive.

Я вижу один грузовик.

Я вижу одного человека.

APPENDIX (continued)Declension of два, две

Masculine and Neuter		Feminine	
NOM	два́ танка	NOM	две́ книги
GEN	двух танков	GEN	двух книг
DAT	двум танкам	DAT	двум книгам
ACC	(=NOM) два́ танка (=GEN) двух студентов	ACC	(=NOM) две́ книги (=GEN) двух студенток
INSTR	двумя танками	INSTR	двумя книгами
PREP	о двух танках	PREP	о двух книгах

Note that the rule: "2, 3, 4 + genitive singular" applies only to the nominative (or accusative inanimate) construction only.

Declension of три and четыре

All Genders		
NOM	три урока	четыре пары
GEN	трёх уроков	четырёх пар
DAT	трём урокам	четырёх парам
ACC	(inan. = NOM) три урока (anim. = GEN) трёх студентов	четыре пары четырёх студенток
INSTR	тремя уроками	четырьмя парами
PREP	о трёх уроках	о четырёх парах

APPENDIX (continued)

Declension of 5-20 and 30

Numerals ending in soft sign (5-20 and 30) are declined like feminine nouns ending in soft sign (ночь, площадь, etc.).

NOM	пять танков	восемь машин
GEN	пяти танков	восьми машин
DAT	пяти танкам	восьми машинам
ACC	пять танков	восемь машин
INSTR	пятью танками	восемью машинами (восьмью)
PREP	о пяти танках	о восьми машинах

Note that in these constructions the accusative of both animate and inanimate objects is always the same as the nominative.

Я вижу пять самолётов.

Я вижу пять студентов.

Declension of 50, 60, 70, 80

NOM	пятьдесят самолётов	шестьдесят пилотов
GEN	пятидесяти самолётов	шестидесяти пилотов
DAT	пятидесяти самолётам	шестидесяти пилотам
ACC	пятьдесят самолётов	шестьдесят пилотов
INSTR	пятьюдесятью самолётами	шестьюдесятью пилотами
PREP	о пятидесяти самолётах	о шестидесяти пилотах

Note that both parts of these four numerals (50, 60, 70, 80) are declined separately but are written as one word.

APPENDIX (continued)

Declension of 40, 90, 100

NOM	сорок	девяносто	сто	танков
GEN	сорока <u>а</u>	девяноста <u>а</u>	ста <u>а</u>	танков
DAT	сорока <u>а</u>	девяноста <u>а</u>	ста <u>а</u>	танка <u>м</u>
ACC	сорок	девяносто	сто	танков
INSTR	сорока <u>а</u>	девяноста <u>а</u>	ста <u>а</u>	танка <u>ми</u>
PREP	о сорока <u>а</u>	о девяноста <u>а</u>	о ста <u>а</u>	танка <u>х</u>

Note that there are only two forms:

1. NOM and ACC сорок, девяносто, сто
2. In all other cases - сорока, девяноста, ста

Declension of 200 - 900

NOM	двести	пятьсот	танков
GEN	двухсо <u>т</u>	пятисо <u>т</u>	танков
DAT	двумста <u>м</u>	пятиста <u>м</u>	танкам
ACC	двести	пятьсо <u>т</u>	танков
INSTR	двумяста <u>ми</u>	пятьюста <u>ми</u>	танками
PREP	о двухста <u>х</u>	о пятиста <u>х</u>	танках

Both parts of these numerals are declined separately but are written as one word.

The declension and use of composite numbers

NOM	двадцать один стол	тридцать семь столов
GEN	двадцати <u>одного</u> стола	тридцати <u>семи</u> столов
DAT	двадцати <u>одному</u> столу	тридцати <u>семи</u> столам
ACC	двадцать один стол двадцать <u>одного</u> механика	тридцать семь столов тридцать семь механиков
INSTR	двадцатью <u>одним</u> столом	тридцатью <u>семью</u> столами
PREP	о двадцати <u>одном</u> столе	о тридцати <u>семи</u> столах

Note that each component of a composite numeral is declined separately.

ОДИН + ADJECTIVE + NOUN

NOM	один <u>новый</u> мост	одна <u>новая</u> лампа
GEN	<u>одного</u> <u>нового</u> моста	<u>одной</u> <u>новой</u> лампы
DAT	<u>одному</u> <u>новому</u> мосту	<u>одной</u> <u>новой</u> лампе
	etc.	etc.

ДВА, ТРИ, ЧЕТЫРЕ + ADJECTIVE + NOUN

	NOM	GEN pl.	GEN sing.
NOM	два три четыре	нов <u>ых</u> бол <u>ьших</u> русс <u>ких</u>	самолё <u>та</u> комнат <u>ы</u> студент <u>а</u>
GEN	двух трёх четырёх	нов <u>ых</u> бол <u>ьших</u> русс <u>ких</u>	самолё <u>тов</u> комнат студент <u>ов</u>
DAT	двум трём четырёх	нов <u>ым</u> бол <u>ьшим</u> русс <u>ким</u>	самолё <u>там</u> комнат <u>ам</u> студент <u>ам</u>
ACC (Like the nominative or genitive)			
INSTR	двумя тремя четырьмя	нов <u>ыми</u> бол <u>ьшими</u> русс <u>кими</u>	самолё <u>тами</u> комнат <u>ами</u> студент <u>ами</u>
PREP	○ двух ○ трёх ○ четырёх	нов <u>ых</u> бол <u>ьших</u> русс <u>ких</u>	самолё <u>тах</u> комнат <u>ах</u> студент <u>ах</u>

Note the complete agreement of numerals and adjectives with the nouns they modify in all cases except the nominative. The numerals два, три, and четыре in the nominative case are followed by nouns in the genitive singular, but the adjectives are in the genitive plural. After the feminine form две, the adjective may appear in either the nominative or the genitive.

две хороших книги OR две хорошие книги

NUMERALS 5 AND ABOVE + ADJECTIVE + NOUN

NOM	пять новых танков	восемь хороших машин
GEN	пяти новых танков	восьми хороших машин
DAT	пяти новым танкам	восьми хорошим машинам
ACC	пять новых танков	восемь хороших машин
INSTR	пятью новыми танками	восемью хорошими машинами
PREP	○ пяти новых танках	○ восьми хороших машинах

3. The numbers 11-19 are combination forms which include the infix -над- (over; above) and the suffix -цать (a shortened form of десять).

Thus 15, for example, actually is rendered in Russian as "5 over 10" (пят-над-цать).

The nominative and accusative of the numerals 5-30 take a soft sign only at the end:

пятнадцать, восемнадцать, двадцать, тридцать

4. The nominative and accusative of the following numerals contain a soft sign in the middle of the word (between the components comprising them).

п <u>я</u> ть <u>д</u> е <u>с</u> я <u>т</u>	п <u>я</u> ть <u>с</u> о <u>т</u>
ш <u>е</u> сть <u>д</u> е <u>с</u> я <u>т</u>	ш <u>е</u> сть <u>с</u> о <u>т</u>
с <u>е</u> м <u>ь</u> д <u>е</u> с <u>я</u> т	с <u>е</u> м <u>ь</u> с <u>о</u> т
в <u>о</u> с <u>е</u> м <u>ь</u> д <u>е</u> с <u>я</u> т	в <u>о</u> с <u>е</u> м <u>ь</u> с <u>о</u> т
	д <u>е</u> в <u>я</u> ть <u>с</u> о <u>т</u>

5. Note the variations of the word сто (100) in the nominative case of the following numerals:

200 - д <u>в</u> е <u>с</u> т <u>и</u>	600 - ш <u>е</u> сть <u>с</u> о <u>т</u>
300 - т <u>р</u> и <u>с</u> т <u>а</u>	700 - с <u>е</u> м <u>ь</u> с <u>о</u> т
400 - ч <u>е</u> т <u>ы</u> р <u>е</u> с <u>т</u> а	800 - в <u>о</u> с <u>е</u> м <u>ь</u> с <u>о</u> т
500 - п <u>я</u> ть <u>с</u> о <u>т</u>	900 - д <u>е</u> в <u>я</u> ть <u>с</u> о <u>т</u>

Recall also the numerals:

40 - сорок
 90 - девяносто
 100 - сто

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing. Write out all numerals.

1. I know twenty one Soviet officers.

2. We met four German pilots.

3. According to my watch it is five minutes to five.

4. We shall be in Moscow about a week.

5. Tomorrow is a holiday and I will get up after ten.

6. My brother was born at five fifteen in the morning on Wednesday the twelfth of August 1958.

7. She worked here from March of 1968 to July of last year.

8. We will meet at the club at four forty five.

LESSON XIII

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

В зависимости от(1) решаемых(2) задач Военно-Воздушные Силы делятся(3) на(4) 5 родов авиации, а именно(5): бомбардировочная(6) авиация, истребительно-бомбардировочная(7), истребительная(8), разведывательная(9) и военно-транспортная. В(10) бомбардировочную(11) авиацию входят самолёты-ракетоносцы, бомбардировщики, торпедоносцы(12) и другие. Самолёты этого рода авиации наносят(13) ракетные и бомбовые удары(14) по(15) большим объектам(16).

Истребительно-бомбардировочная(17) авиация наносит(18) ракетные и бомбовые удары(19) по(20) небольшим наземным(21) объектам(22), в том числе(23) и по подвижным(24) целям (ракетным установкам, танкам, пехоте и так далее(25)).

Истребительная(26) авиация предназначена(27) для борьбы с самолётами и беспилотными средствами противника в воздухе. Самолёты разведывательной(28) авиации имеют на борту(29) фотографические и специальные аппараты. Самолёты военно-транспортной авиации имеют большую(30) грузоподъёмность(31) и дальность(32) полёта.

_____ (1) the mission to be _____ (2),
 the Air Force _____ (3) _____ (4) five
 kinds of aviation (commands) _____ (5): _____ (6),
 _____ (7), _____ (8),
 _____ (9) and Military Transport Aviations.
 Rocket-armed airplanes, bombers, _____ (12)
 and others _____ (10) _____ (11)
 Aviation. Airplanes in this aviation _____ (13)
 missile and bomber _____ (14) _____ (15)
 large _____ (16).

_____ (17) Aviation _____ (18)
 missile and bomber _____ (19) _____ (20)
 small(er) _____ (21) _____ (22),
 _____ (23) _____ (24) targets
 (rocket launchers, tanks, infantry _____ (25)).

_____ (26) Aviation _____ (27)
 for combat in the air with the enemy's aircraft and pilotless
 equipment. _____ (28) airplanes
 have photographic and (other) special equipment _____ (29).
 Military-transport airplanes have _____ (30)
 _____ (31) and (long) flight _____ (32).

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. В зависимости от решаемых задач Военно-Воздушные Силы делятся на 5 родов авиации, а именно: бомбардировочная авиация, истребительно-бомбардировочная, истребительная, разведывательная и военно-транспортная.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. In what case is the word задача in the sentence? Why?
 - d. Explain the grammatical form решаемый in the sentence.

2. В бомбардировочную авиацию входят самолёты-ракетоносцы, бомбардировщики, торпедоносцы и другие.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. In what case is the word авиация in the sentence? Why?
 - c. What secondary part of the sentence is the word бомбардировочный?

3. Самолёты этого рода авиации наносят ракетные и бомбовые удары по большим объектам.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. In what case is the word удар in the sentence? Why?
 - c. Explain the meaning of the preposition по.
 - d. Give the gender, number and case of the word объект in the sentence.

4. Истребительно-бомбардировочная авиация наносит ракетные и бомбовые удары по небольшим наземным объектам, в том числе и по подвижным целям (ракетным установкам, танкам, пехоте и так далее).
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - In what case is the word цель in the sentence? Why?
 - What secondary part of the sentence is the word небольшой?
 - Why is the word число in the sentence in the prepositional case?
5. Истребительная авиация предназначена для борьбы с самолётами и беспилотными средствами противника в воздухе.
- What is the predicate of the sentence?
 - Explain the grammatical form предназначен in the sentence.
6. Самолёты разведывательной авиации имеют на борту фотографические и специальные аппараты.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - In what case is the word борт in the sentence? Why?
 - What secondary part of the sentence is the word аппарат?
7. Самолёты военно-транспортной авиации имеют большую грузоподъёмность и дальность полёта.
- Which word does the word транспортный modify in the sentence?
 - Why does it have the ending -ой in the sentence?
 - What is the difference in meaning between the words большой and больший?
 - From what two words is the word грузоподъёмность formed?

LESSON XIV

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. ORDINAL NUMERALS

Ordinal numerals are adjectives. Therefore, they agree with nouns in gender, number, and case. Also, as in English, compound ordinal numerals change only the last number to an ordinal.

He serves in the 37th MRR.

Он служит в тридцать седьмом мотострелковом полку.

1. All ordinal numerals (except третий) are declined like adjectives of the hard type.

NOM	первый день	двадцатая страница
GEN	перво <u>го</u> дня	двадцат <u>ой</u> страницы
DAT	перво <u>му</u> дню	двадцат <u>ой</u> странице
ACC	первый день	двадцат <u>ую</u> страницу
INSTR	перв <u>ым</u> днём	двадцат <u>ой</u> страницей
PREP	о перво <u>м</u> дне	о двадцат <u>ой</u> странице

2. The ordinal numeral третий is declined like adjectives of the soft type, only there is a -ь- preceding the regular soft endings.

NOM	третий день	третья страница
GEN	третьего дня	третьей страницы
DAT	третьему дню	третьей странице
ACC	третий день	третью страницу
INSTR	третьим днём	третьей страницей
PREP	о третьем дне	третьей странице

3. The first part of ordinal numerals formed from compound cardinal numerals does not change in the declension.

NOM	<u>пятидесятый</u>	<u>двухсотый</u>	<u>трёхтысячный</u>
GEN	<u>пятидесятого</u>	<u>двухсотого</u>	<u>трёхтысячного</u>
DAT	<u>пятидесятому</u>	<u>двухсотому</u>	<u>трёхтысячному</u>

ORDINAL NUMERALS

1 - 10	11-12 and teens	Tens	Hundreds
первый	одиннадцатый	десятый	сотый
второй	двенадцатый	двадцатый	двухсотый
третий	тринадцатый	тридцатый	трёхсотый
четвёртый	четырнацатый	сороковой	четырёхсотый
пятый	пятнадцатый	пятидесятый	пятисотый
шестой	шестнадцатый	шестидесятый	шестисотый
седьмой	семнадцатый	семидесятый	семисотый
восьмой	восемнадцатый	восемидесятый	восьмисотый
девятый	девятнадцатый	девяностый	девятисотый
десятый			

Note that the ordinal numerals 50th, 60th, 70th, 80th, and 200th - 900th consist of two parts: the genitive case of the corresponding cardinal numeral + the adjectival form of the word десять or сто:

<u>пятидесятый</u>	<u>двухсотый</u>
<u>семидесятый</u>	<u>трёхсотый</u>

B. THE CARDINAL NUMERALS ТЫСЯЧА, МИЛЛИОН, AND МИЛЛИАРД

The numerals тысяча (1000), миллион (1,000,000), and миллиард (1,000,000,000) are used and declined as nouns. Regardless of the case in which they appear, the noun which follows them is always in the genitive plural.

Examples:

ACC. GEN PL.	PREP. GEN PL.
Мы уничтожили <u>тысячу танков</u> .	Я говорю о <u>тысяче танков</u> .

Declension of one thousand, one million, and one billion

Тысяча (fem.), миллион (masc.), and миллиард (masc.) are used and declined as nouns and have both singular and plural forms:

одна тысяча	один миллион
две тысячи	два миллиона
пять тысяч	пять миллионов

Тысяча, миллион, and миллиард are followed in all cases by the genitive plural of the noun and its qualifier.

	Singular		Plural	
NOM	тысяча	тяжёлых танков	тысячи	тяжёлых танков
GEN	тысячи	тяжёлых танков	тысяч	тяжёлых танков
DAT	тысяче	тяжёлых танков	тысячам	тяжёлых танков
ACC	тысячу	тяжёлых танков	тысячи	тяжёлых танков
INSTR	тысячей (ью)	тяжёлых танков	тысячами	тяжёлых танков
PREP	тысяче	тяжёлых танков	тысячах	тяжёлых танков

Remember that the pronunciation of тысяча is usually reduced to "тыща."

C. COMPOUND ADJECTIVES FORMED FROM A NUMERAL AND A NOUN

There are several adjectives in Russian which are formed by means of combining a numeral with a noun.

These compound adjectives are formed as follows:

The genitive form of a cardinal numeral + the stem of the noun + the adjectival suffix + the adjectival ending:

Formation	Example
восьми + этаж + н + ый (-ая, -ое, -ые)	восьмиэта́жный дом* an eight-story building
пяти + лет + н + ий (-ья, -ее, -ие)	пятиле́тний мальчик a five-year-old boy
трёх + тысяч + н + ый (-ая, -ое, -ые)	трёхты́сячная армия a 3000-man army
двух + метр + ов + ый (-ая, -ое, -ые)	двухметровая доска a two-meter board
сорока + рубл + ев + ый (-ая, -ое, -ые)	сорокару́блёвые ту́фли a (pair of) forty-ruble shoes

Exceptions: 90 and 100. These numerals are generally used in the nominative case:

девяностоле́тний старик - a 90-year-old man

сто́тысячная толпа́ - a crowd of 100,000 people

However: ста́дцатидвухмиллиме́тровая га́убица -
a 122-mm howitzer

* Another grammatical construction is noteworthy:

a three-story house = трёхэта́жный дом

Or: дом в три этажа

D. WORDS WITH SIMILAR NUMERICAL ROOTS

You have now learned many numbers, adjectives, and nouns which are themselves numerals, or are related to or derived from numerals. Note the relationships among the various words below, each derived from the numeral один.

<u>один</u> :	одна́жды	-	once; one day; once upon a time
	одинна́дцать	-	11 ("one over ten")
	оди́нокий	-	lonely
	еди́нство	-	unity
	еди́ница	-	a 1 (the digit 1)
	одноле́тки	-	children of the same age
	одноро́дный	-	uniform; similar; homogeneous
	однообра́зный	-	monotonous
	однополча́нин	-	(служит в одном полку) comrade-in-arms
	однофа́милец	-	person with the same last name (as another)
	одноэта́жный	-	one-storey (house, etc.)
	одновре́менно	-	simultaneously

When confronted with such words, try to arrive at the derivation and always look for contextual clues.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing. Write out all numerals.

1. We live in an eight-story dormitory.

2. This unit does not have a 122-mm howitzer.

3. That happened seven and a half years ago.

4. This officer has been on active duty since the age of 18.

5. I can't make it there in an hour.

6. On what date will you finish school?

7. The Russian language is taught in eighty three schools.

8. The film begins at five minutes till seven and ends at quarter past ten.

LESSON XIV

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension

Упражнение №1. Listen to the recording and restore all the missing elements.

За _____
1 2 3

Тегеране и _____ страны
4 5

_____ режима взорваны _____
6 7

_____ в _____,
8 9 10

в результате _____ имеются _____ и _____.
11 12 13

По сообщению тегеранского _____, в _____
14 15

Боруджерд взорвана мощная _____ на _____
16 17

_____ города. Один _____
18 19 20

_____ и 10 _____, сообщает ТАСС.
21 22

Упражнение №2. Answer the questions pertaining to the text.

a. What is the case of word #1?

b. What is the case of words #4 and #5? Why?

c. What is the case of word #8? Why?

d. What is the case of word #14?

e. Explain the use of prepositions in the construction
на (17) (18) (19) города.

f. Does the passage mention how many people were killed?

g. Where did the news come from?

Упражнение №3. Listen to the passage and supply the following essential elements of information.

Who?

What?

Where?

When?

Why

What kind of battle are they talking about?

Упражнение №4. Listen to the recording again and restore all the missing elements.

Встреча министров

Рейтер _____ Брюсселя:

Министры _____

Европейского экономического сообщества _____

_____ 15 _____, начав _____

ежегодное "сражение" по _____ цен

_____ сельскохозяйственную продукцию.

Section Two: Textual Restoration

Restore the text using the words provided in the list below. The words are given in their dictionary forms and must be changed as required by the context. Each word may be used only once. There are extra words in the list. The restored text will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Краснознамённый Приволжский военный _____ .
 _____ времени _____
 лейтенанта С. Николаева _____ бомбометание
 _____ резко _____ .
 Штурману _____
 лейтенанту А. Хохрякову на _____ к
 полигону пришлось _____ оптического _____
 переключаться на радиолокационный. Специалист 2-го _____
 офицер действовал четко. _____ руково-
 дитель полетов _____ доклад экипажа:
 "Цель вижу". _____ некоторое _____
 бомбы точно поразили _____ .

а	брат	аэропорт	реактивный
для	подходить	видимость	сначала
ко	принять	время	старший
на	ухудшиться	вылет	учебный
с		класс	
через		лётчик	
		округ	
		подход	
		прицел	
		самолёт	
		цель	

LESSON XV

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. FRACTIONS

Fractional numerals (fractions) are formed by combining cardinal and ordinal numerals: the numerator of a fraction is denoted by a cardinal numeral in the nominative case, the denominator is denoted by an ordinal number in the genitive plural.

Простые и десятичные дроби

(Common and decimal fractions)

1/2	одна вторая (часть)	или половина
1/3	одна третья	или треть
2/3	две третьих (части)	или две трети
1/4	одна четвёртая	или четверть
3/4	три четвёртых	или три четверти

$1/5$	одна пятая
$2/7$	две седьмых
$4 \frac{3}{8}$	четыре <u>и</u> три восьмых
$5/100$ (0,05)	пять сотых
$1/1000$ (0,001)	одна тысячная
$7,5$	семь <u>целых</u> и пять десятых

Note that the conjunction и is used to link the fraction with the whole number:

$3 \frac{7}{8}$	-	три и семь восьмых
$2 \frac{3}{4}$	-	две и три четвёртых

When decimal fractions are used with a whole number, the word целый (the whole) is commonly added:

$0,7$	-	ноль <u>целых</u> и семь десятых
$1,15$	-	одна <u>целая</u> и пятнадцать сотых
$2,4$	-	две <u>целых</u> и четыре десятых

Also note that in Russian a comma serves as the decimal point.

$3,025$	$0,1$	$5,05$
---------	-------	--------

B. THE DECLENSION AND THE USE OF FRACTIONAL NUMERALS

Both components of a fractional numeral change when it is declined.

3/5 of an inch	
NOM	три <u>пяты</u> дюйма
GEN	трѐх <u>пяты</u> дюйма
DAT	трѐм <u>пятым</u> дюйма
ACC	три <u>пяты</u> дюйма
INSTR	тремя <u>пятыми</u> дюйма
PREP	о трѐх <u>пяты</u> дюйма

The noun used with a fractional numeral invariably stays in the genitive singular.

Examples:

Если прибавить к одной четвертой три четвертых,
будет одна целая.

C. DECIMALS

In Russian, the decimal system is used more frequently than fractions.

There are two ways of rendering decimals in the Russian military:

1. by rendering the decimal point with the word и:

English (numerical)	Russian (numerical)	Russian (spoken)
2.15	2,15	Два и пятнадцать сотых .
2.6	2,6	Два и шесть десятых .

2. by rendering the decimal point with the word запятая:
(which literally means "comma")

English (numerical)	Russian (numerical)	Russian (spoken)
2.15	2,15	Два, запятая один пять.
2.6	2,6	Два, запятая шесть.

Note that the above constructions are similar to the English use of the word "point."

2.15 "Two point one five." etc.

Also, the Soviet military often uses this decimal system in official communications.

Мы израсходовали 15,7 (read „пятнадцать и семь десятых") боекомплéкта.

We expended 15.7 basic loads (of artillery rounds).

Атаковать в направлении высоты 247,5 (read „двести сорок семь и пять").

You are to attack in the direction of hill (or elevation) 247.5.

D. NOUN EQUIVALENTS OF FRACTIONS

Only very simple fractions usually appear in spoken Russian and these are most often expressed by using the following noun forms.

половина - half; (when used alone = 1/2)
 треть - a third; (when used alone = 1/3)
 четверть - a fourth; (when used alone = 1/4)

The above forms are often used without a numerator and are followed by a noun in the genitive case.

Мы уже прошли треть нашего курса.
 We have already finished a third (1/3) of our course.

Я это сделаю во второй половине дня.
 I'll do that in the afternoon.
 (literally; in the second half of the day).

Сейчас четверть второго.
 It's now a quarter after one.
 (literally; a quarter of the second hour)

The above forms are also used with the preposition с as follows:

Я там провёл два с половиной месяца.
 I spent 2 1/2 months there.
 Длина этой доски девять с четвертью дюймов.
 This board is 9 1/4 inches long.

Note that the case of the noun following the expression с половиной, с третью, and с четвертью is determined by the number which precedes them.

два с третью фунта - 2 1/3 pounds (Gen. Sing. after "2")
пять с третью фунтов - 5 1/3 pounds (Gen. Pl. after "5")

E. SPECIAL NUMERALS DERIVED FROM ПОЛОВИНА

Russian has several special numerical forms derived from the numeral половина (1/2). Among these are:

1. Полтора́ (fem - полторы́)

The Russian equivalent for "one and a half" exists as a special numeral. When used with masculine or neuter nouns, its form is полтора. When it is used with feminine nouns, its form is полторы. When these numerical forms are, themselves, in the nominative or accusative cases, the noun following them is genitive singular.

Мы уже прошли полтора́ километра.
We have already walked 1 1/2 kilometers.

Он это сделал за полторы́ недели.
It took him 1 1/2 weeks to do that.

If these forms appear in other cases, they assume the form полу́тора (for masc, fem, and neuter) and the noun following them is in the plural form of the same case.

Он там был около полу́тора часов.
He was there for around 1 1/2 hours.

Что он сказал о полу́тора неделях, которые он там провёл?
What did he say about the 1 1/2 weeks he spent there?

Note also that these forms may be used in combination with other numerals.

1.500 человек $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{тысяча пятьсот человек} \\ \text{OR} \\ \text{полторы тысячи человек} \\ \text{(literally; 1 1/2 thousand people)} \end{array} \right.$

1.500.000 рублей $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{один миллион пятьсот тысяч рублей} \\ \text{OR} \\ \text{полтора миллиона рублей} \\ \text{(literally; 1 1/2 million rubles)} \end{array} \right.$

2. Compound words with the prefix пол-

Russian uses several compound words to indicate 1/2 of something:

полчасá - 1/2 an hour

полфúнта - 1/2 a pound

Such compound words consist of:

пол + genitive singular of an inanimate noun

Among the most commonly used of such words are:

полчасá - 30 minutes (1/2 an hour)

полста́ - 50 (1/2 a hundred)

полсо́тни - 50 (1/2 a hundred)

полбуты́лки - 1/2 a bottle

полстакáна - 1/2 a glass

пол-ли́тра - 1/2 a liter

If the word to which пол- is prefixed begins with an л, a vowel, or a capital letter, the compound word is hyphenated.

Examples:

пол-урока - 1/2 the lesson

пол-листа - 1/2 a page

пол-Европы - 1/2 of Europe

Such words are rarely used in cases other than the nominative or accusative. There is one quick way to recognize instances in which they are used in oblique cases: the vowel у is inserted between the prefix пол- and the noun.

Я спал около получасá. I slept for about a half hour.

In such instances you should use the context to determine the case. For example, получасá, in the sentence above, is genitive since it follows the preposition около.

3. The words по́лдень and по́лночь.

The words по́лдень and по́лночь do not mean "half a day" or "half a night". They refer to the midpoints of the day (night) - 12:00 noon and 12:00 midnight. Note the contextual examples below.

Она приехала в по́лдень, а уехала в 2 часа.
She arrived at noon and left at 2:00 p.m.

Я проснулся в по́лночь и не мог опять заснуть.
I woke up at midnight and couldn't get back to sleep.

These forms sometimes appear in oblique cases. As with the compound пол- words, watch for the letter y in the middle of the word. The nominative and accusative cases are identical, and the y is stressed in the middle of these words in other cases.

Examples:

Она сказала, что придет к полу́дню.
She said she would be here by noon.

Поезд пришел около полу́ночи.
The train arrived around midnight.

Note that the best way to recognize the difference between these forms and the пол- compounds is by stress.

	* <u>по́лдень</u> (noon)	* <u>полднѐя</u> (half a day)
NOM	Уже <u>по́лдень</u> !	Прошло <u>полднѐя</u> , а его еще нет.
GEN	Он приехал около <u>полу́днѐя</u> .	Там мы провели около <u>полднѐя</u> .
DAT	Приедем к <u>полу́дню</u> .	(<u>полднѐя</u> is almost never used in the dative)
ACC	Я приеду в <u>по́лдень</u> .	Там я провѐл <u>полднѐя</u> .

(These forms are very rarely used in the INSTR and PREP)

*The same differences in form apply to:

по́лночь (midnight) and полу́ночи (half a night)

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing. Write out all numerals.

1. We have finished two thirds of the course.

2. How much do I owe you for two and a third pounds?

3. I'll do that in the second half of the day.

4. It took him a week and a half to do that.

5. The train arrived around midnight.

6. Give me three fourths of a pound of cheese.

7. A normal temperature is 98.6 degrees.

8. I slept for about a half an hour.

LESSON XV

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Самым маленьким(1) авиацио́нным(2) боевым подразделением является звенó(3) самолётов. В звенé(4) от(5) двух до(6) четырёх самолётов (бомбардировщиков меньше(7), истребителей больше(8)).

Три звенá(9) составляют эскадри́лью(10), а три эскадри́льи(11) - полк. Кроме боевых подразделений, в авиационных(12) полках имеются и авиационно(13)-технические подразделения, хозяйственные и другие.

Воздушными(14) соединéниями(15) являются авиационные(16) дивизии (три полка) и авиационные(17) корпусá (три дивизии), а объединéниями(18) - воздушные(19) армии (три корпуса, отдельные соединения(20) и части).

В каждом воздушном(21) соединении(22), кроме бомбардировщиков, истребителей и истребителей-бомбардировщиков, есть(23) самолёты других ти́пов(24). К ним относятся разведывательные самолёты, транспортные, санитарные(25), учебно-тренирóвочные(26) и самолёты св́язи(27).

The _____ (1) _____ (2) combat subunit is a _____ (3) of airplanes. There are _____ (5) two _____ (6) four airplanes in a _____ (4) (bombers - _____ (7), fighters - _____ (8)).

Three _____ (9) constitute a _____ (10), and three _____ (11) - a regiment. In addition to the combat subunits in _____ (12) regiments, there are also _____ (13) maintenance, support and other subunits.

_____ (16) divisions (three regiments) and _____ (17) corps (three divisions) are _____ (14) _____ (15), and _____ (19) armies (three air corps, separate _____ (20), and units) are _____ (18).

In every _____ (21) _____ (22), besides bombers, fighters and fighter-bombers, _____ (23) other _____ (24) of airplanes. These include reconnaissance, transport, _____ (25), _____ (26) and _____ (27) airplanes.

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. Самым маленьким авиационным боевым подразделением является звено самолётов.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - c. In what case is the word подразделение in the sentence? Why?
 - d. What secondary part of the sentence is the word маленький?

2. В звене́ от двух до четырёх самолётов (бомбардировщиков - меньше, истребителей - больше).
 - b. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - c. What is the predicate?
 - d. In what case is the word звено in the sentence? Why?

3. Три звена составляют эскадрилью, а три эскадрильи - полк.
 - b. What is the subject of the first clause of the sentence?
 - c. What is the subject of the second clause?
 - d. What is the predicate of the second clause?
 - e. What does the dash in the second clause mean?
 - f. In what case is the word эскадрилья in the sentence?

4. Кроме боевых подразделений, в авиационных полках имеются и авиационно-технические подразделения, хозяйственные и другие.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What is the predicate?
 - In what case is the word подразделение in the sentence? Why?
 - What does the word другой in the sentence refer to?
5. Воздушными соединениями являются авиационные дивизии (три полка) и авиационные корпуса (три дивизии), а объединениями — воздушные армии (три корпуса, отдельные соединения и части).
- What is the subject of the first clause of the sentence?
 - What is the subject of the second clause of the sentence?
 - What does the dash in the second clause mean?
 - In what case is the word соединение in the first clause of the sentence?
6. В каждом воздушном соединении, кроме бомбардировщиков, истребителей и истребителей-бомбардировщиков, есть самолёты других типов.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What is the predicate?
 - What secondary part of the sentence is the word воздушный?
 - What does the hyphen in истребитель-бомбардировщик mean?

7. К ним относятся разведывательные самолёты, транспортные, санитарные, учебно-тренировочные и самолёты связи.
- a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. Why is the letter н added to им in the sentence?
 - c. What is the complete word of the acronym учебно- ?

LESSON XVI

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. COLLECTIVE NUMERALS

Collective numerals, like cardinal numerals, denote the quantity of objects. They answer the question ско́лько? (how many?). Unlike cardinal numerals, they denote a number of items (or persons) as a single unit.

In general, collective numerals are used only for numbers two through ten.

дво́е - two
тро́е - three
че́тверо - four
пя́теро - five

ше́стеро - six
се́меро - seven
(во́сьмеро - eight)
(девя́теро - nine)
(деся́теро - ten)

In conversational Russian, the collectives from two through seven are the most common. Above seven, cardinal numbers are used.

When a collective numeral itself is in the nominative or inanimate accusative, the noun following it will be in the genitive plural:

Там было дво́е солдат.

У них тро́е детей.

Пришло пя́теро рабо́чих.

Collective numerals are generally interchangeable with cardinal numerals.

Пришло дво́е солдат. = Пришли два солдата.

However, collective numerals must be used:

1. With nouns which have no singular form when these are used with the numbers 2, 3 and 4 (since these nouns have no genitive singular).

дво́е но́жниц - two pairs of scissors

тро́е очко́в - three pairs of glasses

че́тверо носило́к - four stretchers

тро́е дете́й - three children

дво́е су́ток - two days

ВУТ - пя́теро су́ток OR пять суток

се́меро дете́й OR семь дете́й

2. With personal pronouns representing male persons (or a group of persons in which there is at least one male person).

Нас было пя́теро.

Их было че́тверо: дво́е мужчи́н и две женщи́ны.

3. When the number stands alone, without any noun or pronoun.

Тро́е стояли на углу.

Из-за угла вышли дво́е.

Туда пошли че́тверо.

The use of collective numerals is optional with nouns (or adjectival nouns) denoting male persons.

дво́е мальчиков OR два мальчика
 трóе солдат OR три солдата
 чéтверо рабочих OR четыре рабочих
 пýтеро военных OR пять военных

Collective numerals are never used:

1. with nouns denoting female persons.

две девушки (never двое девушек)
 четыре медсестры (never четверо медсестёр)

2. with inanimate masculine nouns.

два учебника (never двое учебников)

3. as part of a compound numeral.

двадцать два солдата (never двадцать двое солдат)
 двадцать два дня (instead of двадцать двое суток)

B. DECLENSION OF COLLECTIVE NUMERALS

Collective numerals are declined like plural adjectives.

Двое (трое) take soft adjectival endings.

NOM.	дво́	Е	трó	Е
GEN	дво	ЇХ	тро	ЇХ
DAT	дво	ЇМ	тро	ЇМ
ACC	дво	ЇХ	тро	ЇХ
	дво́	е	трó	е
INSTR	дво	ЇМИ	тро	ЇМИ
PREP	о дво	ЇХ	о тро	ЇХ

The other collective numerals (четверо, пятеро, etc.) take hard adjectival endings.

NOM	чѐтвѐр	О	пѝтер	О
GEN	чѐтвѐр	БѝХ	пѝтер	БѝХ
DAT	чѐтвѐр	БѝМ	пѝтер	БѝМ
ACC	чѐтвѐр	БѝХ	пѝтер	БѝХ
	чѐтвѐр	о	пѝтер	о
INSTR	чѐтвѐр	БѝМИ	пѝтер	БѝМИ
PREP	о чѐтвѐр	БѝХ	о пѝтер	БѝХ

NOTE: In those instances where collective numerals are optional, Russians generally use the declined forms of cardinal numerals in the oblique cases.

EXAMPLE: Я поговорил с двумя солдатами (rather than с двоими солдатами).

C. THE COLLECTIVE NUMERALS ОБА - ОБЕ

The Russian equivalents for "both" are оба (used with masculine and neuter nouns) and обе (used with feminine nouns). They are collective numerals. They agree with the nouns they precede in the same way as the cardinal numeral два (две).

DECLENSION of ОБА - ОБЕ

NOM	ОБА	брата	ОБЕ	сестры
GEN	ОБѐИХ	братьѐв	ОБѐИХ	сестѐр
DAT	ОБѐИМ	братьѐм	ОБѐИМ	сѐстрам
ACC	like NOMINATIVE or GENITIVE			
INSTR	ОБѐИМИ	братьѐми	ОБѐИМИ	сѐстрами
PREP	об ОБѐИХ	братьѐх	об ОБѐИХ	сѐстрах

NOTE that the numerals ОБА and ОБЕ are declined like soft type adjectives in the plural.

D. NUMERICAL NOUNS

Russian has a group of words called "numerical nouns". They denote the names of digits and are declined like feminine nouns.

едини́ца	- a 1; one
дво́йка	- a 2; two; deuce
тро́йка	- a 3; three; trey
четве́рка	- a 4; four
пяте́рка	- a 5; five; "fiver"
шесте́рка	- a 6; six
семи́рка	- a 7; seven
восми́рка	- a 8; eight
девя́тка	- a 9; nine; "niner"
деся́тка	- a 10; ten

These numerical nouns have several usages.

1. They are used to identify cards in a deck of playing cards:

дво́йка	- a deuce
тро́йка	- a trey
шесте́рка	- a six etc.

2. They are used in the Soviet school system much the same as the American "letter-grade" system:

пяте́рка	- A
четве́рка	- B
тро́йка	- C
дво́йка	- D (this is a failing grade in the Soviet school system.)
едини́ца	- F

3. They are used over the telephone and in radio communications to avoid confusion:

Повторяю мой позывной: двóйка, шестёрка, ноль*.

Here's my callsign again: 2 - 6 - 0 .

NOTE: * Since деся́тка stands for "10", the digit "0" is represented by the masculine nouns но́ль or ну́ль. These forms are often encountered in military time (24 hour system).
Example: Атака начнётся в 1400 (в четырнадцать ноль ноль).

4. They are often used to give a radio "tuning count" for a receiving station to tune in to a signal:

Даю настро́йку: едини́ца, двóйка, трóйка, четвёрка, пятёрка...

Here's a tuning count: 1,2,3,4,5...

5. They are often used to refer to bills (currency):

пятёрка - a five (a five-ruble bill)

деся́тка - a ten (a ten-ruble bill)

Он мне дал две десяти́тки и три пятёрки.

He gave me two tens and three fives. (35 rubles)

Other Numerals (Two and above)

When the subject of a sentence is a cardinal or collective numeral (two and above) used with a noun in the genitive case, the predicate may be either plural or neuter singular.

Exception: Compound numerals ending in the numeral "one" require a singular predicate.

Examples:

subject	predicate	
<u>Два солдата</u>	<u>ВЫШЛИ</u>	из леса и пошли по дороге.
	predicate	subject
Из леса	<u>ВЫШЛО</u>	<u>два солдата.</u>

Either form of the predicate is correct. There is a tendency, however, to use the plural when the subject precedes the predicate and the singular when the subject follows the predicate:

subject	predicate	
Пять студентов	<u>присутствовали</u>	на его лекции.
	predicate	subject
На его лекции	<u>присутствовало</u>	пять студентов.

If the words все, эти, те or an adjective are used with the numeral, the predicate must be in the plural, regardless of the word order.

Опоздали все трое.

Другие пять студентов ушли.

Эти четыре студента отстали от других.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing. Write out all the numerals.

1. Both of our daughters have children.

2. Tens of thousands of people died during the air raid.

3. Three of her four sons were killed in the war in nineteen forty-four.

4. Let's the three of us go there.

5. He gave me three tens and one five.

6. All six were late.

7. He can't read yet; he is only two years old.

8. My car can go one hundred and twenty five mile an hour.

LESSON XVI

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension

Упражнение №1. Listen to the recording and restore all the missing elements.

НАД ОКЕАНОМ – САМОЛЁТЫ-РАЗВЕДЧИКИ

КРАСНОЗНАМЁННЫЙ _____ 1 _____ ФЛОТ.
_____ 2 _____ ВОЗДУШНОГО _____ 3 _____
_____ 4 _____ командует военный _____ 5 _____
_____ 6 _____ класса майор _____ 7 _____
_____ 8 _____ 9 _____ задание, быстро _____ 10 _____
_____ 11 _____ океане _____ 12 _____ лодку
_____ 13 _____
Этот успех _____ 14 _____ . Экипаж
_____ 15 _____ _____ 16 _____ Антоновым, -
_____ 17 _____ в _____ 18 _____ силах
_____ 19 _____ _____ 20 _____ флота.

Упражнение №2. Answer the questions pertaining to the passage.

1. What two words are combined to form word #1? What does the word mean?

2. What part of speech is word #8? _____

3. What does word #10 mean? _____

4. What part of speech is word #14? What does it mean?

5. What part of speech is word #15? _____

6. What two words are combined to form word #19?

Section Two: Preparation of Oral Reports

Select a news item on any subject from a media source (radio, TV, press). Prepare a three minute talk on that item to be presented in Russian during the Comprehension/Communication component. Be sure to include the essential elements of information: who, what, where, when, and why.

You may use notes, but do not read the talk. Be prepared to answer questions posed by your instructor and classmates.

LESSON XVII

Homework I

Section One: Semantics

Learn the new vocabulary and review the Word Equivalents sections of Semantics.

Section Two: Syntax

Read the following structural explanations carefully. Questions regarding specific problem areas should be raised during the Application component.

A. ADVERBS FORMED FROM COLLECTIVE NUMERALS

There are several small groups of Russian adverbs which were formed from various numerals:

From the collective numerals were formed:

1. вдвоём = 2 persons together, as a twosome
 - втроём = 3 persons together, as a threesome
 - вчетвером = 4 persons together, as a foursome
- etc.

Эти два студента сняли одну квартиру вдвоём.

Мы с женой вдвоём зарабатываем больше тысячи долларов в месяц.

Эту работу они делали втроём.

2. вдво́е = в два раза (больше, лучше, скорее)
 втрóе = в три раза (больше, лучше, скорее)
 вчéтверо = в четыре раза (больше, лучше, скорее)
 etc.
- вдво́е = twice, two times as ... as
 втрóе = thrice, three times as ... as
 вчéтверо = four times as ... as

Adverbs вдво́е (втрóе, вчéтверо, etc.) are always followed by the comparative degree of an adjective or an adverb:

Новая дорога втрóе шире старой.

The new road is three times as wide as the old one (was).

По шоссе́ мы ехали вдво́е быстрее.

On the highway we drove twice as fast (two times faster).

Note the translation of constructions with adverbs of this type:

У меня вдво́е больше книг, чем у вас.
 I have twice as many books as you have.

Наш класс вдво́е больше вашего.
 Our class is twice as large as yours.

Вы работаете вдво́е больше его.
 You work twice as much as he does.

Эта комната вдво́е меньше той.
 This room is half the size of that (other one).

Сегодня у нас вдво́е меньше работы.
 Today we have half as much work.

У меня вдво́е меньше книг.
 I have half as many books.

Compare the translation of the following two sentences:

У них было двое детей.
They had two children.

В Испании жизнь вдвое (в два раза) дешевле, чем
в Англии.
The cost of living in Spain is two times cheaper
than the cost of living in England.

B. NUMERICAL EXPRESSIONS DERIVED FROM CARDINALS NUMERALS

The following numerical expressions are formed from cardinal numerals:

дважды	=	два раза	=	twice, two times
трижды	=	три раза	=	three times
четырежды	=	четыре раза	=	four times

Я звонил вам дважды, но никто не отвечал.

Учитель трижды повторил новое слово, но я его не запомнил.

NOTE: The word однажды is rarely used with the meaning of "one time." It is used mostly in narratives with the meaning of "once (once upon a time)," "one day."

Example: Однажды я вернулся с работы в 3 часа ...
Once (one time; one day) I came home
from work at 3:00 ...

C. NUMERICAL EXPRESSIONS DERIVED FROM ORDINAL NUMERALS

The following numerical expressions are derived from ordinal numerals:

во-пéрвых = in the first place; first of all
 во-вторы́х = in the second place; secondly
 в трéтьих = in the third place; thirdly

Note also the following expression:

впервы́е = в первый раз = for the first time

Во-пéрвых, я это делаю впервы́е, а во-вторы́х, это очень сложное дело!

First of all, I'm doing this for the first time, (in my life); secondly, this is a very complex matter!

D. SPECIAL MEANINGS OF THE NUMERAL ОДИН

1. Один may mean "only" when used with a noun or a personal pronoun:

Один он знает это. (or)
 Только он знает это.

Only he knows this.

Там сидят одни студенты.

Only students sit there.

2. Один may also mean "alone." In this meaning один never precedes the noun or pronoun modified.

Он летел один.

He was flying alone.

Мы были одни в доме.

We were alone in the house.

3. Один sometimes means "the same."Я с ним в одном классе.I'm in the same class with him.Мы ходим в одну школу.We go to the same school.4. Ни один means "no; not a single one; none."Ни один человек не знает этого.No (not a single) person knows this.

- Сколько книг вы прочитали?

How many books have you read?

- Ни одной.

None.

5. Один раз means "once," "one time," "once upon a time."(Один) раз мы видели бой в воздухе.Once we saw a battle in the air.Мы видели бой в воздухе один раз.We've seen a battle in the air (only) once.

6. Also note the following expressions:

Я познакомился с одним студентом, который знает вас.I met a (certain) student who knows you.Одна дама сказала мне об этом.A (some) lady told me about this.

NOTE: The numeral один also has a plural form. The plural of один is одни. It is declined like the word эти and is used in a number of special expressions.

NOM	эти	ОДН	<u>И</u>
GEN	этих	ОДН	<u>ИХ</u>
DAT	этим	ОДН	<u>ИМ</u>
ACC	эти/их	ОДН	<u>И/ИХ</u>
INST	этими	ОДН	<u>ИМИ</u>
PREP	об этих	об ОДН	<u>ИХ</u>

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. We are in the same class.

2. You work twice as much as he does.

3. At this point the river is three meters deep.

4. That weapon fires up to 900 rounds per minute.

5. There is an easterly wind at 2.6 meters per second.

6. Someone called you twice.

7. The plane crossed the ocean at an altitude of 32,000 feet.

8. In a month it will be fifteen years since I've been working here.

LESSON XVII

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

В зависимости от своего назначения(1) самолёты Военно-Воздушных Сил (ВВС) имеют пулемётно(2)-пушечное(3), бомбардировочное(4), реактивное и специальное вооружение. Максимальный(5) калибр пулемётов - 15 мм (миллиметров), а пушек - 100 мм (миллиметров). Как те, так и другие(6) обладают(7) большой скорострельностью(8).

К реактивному вооружению авиации относятся неуправляемые(9) и управляемые(10) реактивные снаряды и ракеты, которые(11) могут вёсить от(12) нескольких килограммов до(13) нескольких тонн. Небольшие реактивные снаряды используются(14) для поражения воздушных и некрупных(15) наземных целей, в то время, как(16) большие ракеты служат для уничтожения(17) крупных(18) объектов на земле.

Авиационные бомбы могут быть атомными, фугасными(19), осколочными (20), осветительными (21), химическими и так далее(22), Фугасные(23) бомбы применяются(24) для разрушения(25) каменных(26) и бетонных(27) сооружений(28), а осколочные(29) - для поражения живой силы(30) противника.

Depending on their _____ (1), airplanes of the Air Forces (VVS) have _____ (2), _____ (3), _____ (4), rockets and other special weapons. The _____ (5) caliber of the machine guns is 15 mm, and that of the cannon is 100 mm. _____ (6) _____ (7) a high _____ (8).

_____ (9) and _____ (10) missiles and rockets _____ (11) weigh _____ (12) several kilograms _____ (13) several tons, are the rocket armament of aviation. Small rockets are _____ (14) to destroy aerial and _____ (15) ground targets, _____ (16) large rockets serve to _____ (17) _____ (18) ground targets.

Aerial bombs can be of nuclear, _____ (19), _____ (20), _____ (21) (flare) and chemical (varieties), _____ (22). _____ (23) bombs _____ (24) for the _____ (25) of _____ (26) and _____ (27) _____ (28), and _____ (29) (bombs are used) to kill enemy _____ (30).

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. В зависимости от своего назначения самолёты Военно-Воздушных Сил (ВВС) имеют пулемётно-пушечное, бомбардировочное, реактивное и специальное вооружение.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. In what case is the word назначение in the sentence? Why?

2. Максимальный калибр пулемётов – 15 мм, а пушек – 100 мм.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. What do the dashes mean in the sentence?
 - d. What secondary part of the sentence is the word максимальный?
 - e. In what case is the word пушка in the sentence? Explain why.

3. Как те, так и другие обладают большой скорострельностью.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. Which words in the previous sentence do the words тот and другой refer to?
 - c. In what case is the word скорострельность in the sentence? Why?
 - d. What secondary part of the sentence is the word большой?

4. К реактивному вооружению авиации относятся неуправляемые и управляемые реактивные снаряды и ракеты, которые могут весить от нескольких килограммов до нескольких тонн.
- What is the subject of the first clause of the sentence?
 - What is the subject of the second clause of the sentence?
 - Which word does the word который modify?
 - In what case is the word тонна in the sentence? Why?
5. Небольшие реактивные снаряды используются для поражения воздушных и наземных целей, в то время, как большие ракеты служат для уничтожения крупных объектов на земле.
- What is the subject of the second clause of the sentence?
 - In what case is the word земля in the sentence?
 - With what simple conjunction can you replace в то время, как in the sentence?
6. Авиационные бомбы могут быть атомными, фугасными, осколочными, осветительными, химическими и так далее.
- What is the predicate of the sentence?
 - What secondary part of the sentence is the word авиационный?
 - In what case is the word атомный in the sentence? Why?
 - Why are the adjectives following быть in the plural?
 - From what noun is the adjective осветительный derived?

7. Фугасные бомбы применяются для разрушения каменных и бетонных сооружений, а осколочные — для поражения живой силы противника.

- a. What is the subject of the second clause of the sentence?
- b. What is the predicate of the second clause of the sentence?
- c. What does the dash mean in the sentence?
- d. What word does the word осколочный refer to in the sentence?

LESSON XVIII

Homework I

Section One: Translating Sentences with Inverted Word Order

In Module I you saw that word order in Russian sometimes conveys subtleties in meaning. Due to overlapping morphological forms, such as multiple functions of case endings, confusion may sometimes arise.

Example: Магазины открывают в 7.30.

The stores open at 7:30.

In this example, магазин is the direct object. (Remember that masculine inanimate nouns have the same form for nominative and accusative in the singular and plural.) There appears to be grammatical agreement between магазины and the predicate (открывают), whereas, in fact this is an impersonal sentence with an understood "они" subject. Obviously "stores" cannot open anything - they must be opened by someone else.

When translating from Russian, after identifying the grammatical/syntactical relationships within a clause or sentence, make sure that your translation makes sense! Don't panic if the utterance seems to be illogical at first glance. Think of what the utterance might or should mean.

Consider the following example, taken from a basic textbook on physics:

(Note: расширение - expansion
вызывать - to cause
нагревание - heating, heat)

Расширение вызывает нагревание.

At first glance, расширение might appear to be the subject of the sentence. However, since both расширение and нагревание are neuter nouns, the endings are the same for the nominative and accusative cases. The problem, then, is this: Which word is the subject and which the direct object? Grammatically one cannot give an answer. However, taking into account the meaning it becomes clear that this sentence means: "Heat causes expansion.", since the reverse would not make sense.

Section Two: Несколько „Ложных Друзей” Переводчика

One way to increase your translation speed is to watch for cognates - words which are similar in form and meaning in Russian and English. There are many cognates and, when translating from Russian into English, you should try to "guess" at the meaning of words which look like English words and "fit" the context of the passage.

Example:

Администрацией школы
была организована
экскурсия в музей.

An excursion to the
museum was organized
by the administration
of the school.

Unfortunately there are also a number of so-called "false cognates" between Russian and English. Some of these express the same idea as one of the English equivalents, but not of all.

Example:

Мы играли в бридж.

(бридж is a cognate for
"bridge" in cards, but
certainly cannot be used
as a synonym for мост)

Similarly, some Russian words are cognates of English words but have additional, unrelated meanings in Russian.

Это заявлéние нужно
подáть в письменной
форме.

This statement must be
submitted in written
form.

But:

Солдат надел свою форму и пошёл на занятия.

The soldier put on his uniform and went to training.

Мы играли в карты.

We were playing cards.

Покажите это на карте.

Show me that on the map.

Still other "false cognates" have entirely different meanings in Russian from the English words they resemble.

Example:

На нём был чёрный костюм. Я его видел в магазине.

He was wearing a black suit. I saw him in the store.

Below is a list of some common "false cognates." Many of these may appear in military or military-related contexts and you should watch for them.

False Cognate	True Meaning	Example
агитатор	specialist in political training and propaganda	Этот долго работал <u>агитатором</u> . This guy worked in <u>propaganda training</u> for a long time.
актуальный	urgent, pressing	Сперва́ надо решить самые <u>актуальные</u> проблемы. We need to solve the most <u>pressing</u> problems first.
госпиталь	military hospital (civilian hospital - больница)	Разведчик Смирнов ещё в <u>госпитале</u> . Smirnov, the recon man, is still in the <u>(military) hospital</u> .

False Cognate	True Meaning	Example
диверса́нт	saboteur	<u>Диверса́нты</u> взорвали завод. <u>Saboteurs</u> blew up the factory.
дивизио́н	artillery battalion	<u>Дивизио́ном</u> обычно командует майор. A major usually commands an <u>artillery battalion</u> .
лифт	elevator	В этом здании нет <u>лифта</u> . There is no <u>elevator</u> in this building.
машини́ст	(railroad) engineer	Мой отец долго работал <u>машини́стом</u> . My father worked a long time as a <u>(railroad) engineer</u> .
мили́ция	police	Его вызвали в отделение <u>мили́ции</u> . He was summoned to the <u>police</u> station.
партиза́н	guerilla (fighter)	Мы поймали двух <u>партиза́н</u> . We captured two <u>guerillas</u> .
патро́н	cartridge; shell	Нам доставили 3 ящика с <u>патро́нами</u> . They delivered three boxes of <u>cartridges</u> .
рейс	flight (airline)	<u>Рейс</u> номер 24 отменён. <u>Flight</u> 24 has been cancelled.
фа́брика	factory; mill	Мой брат работает на <u>фа́брике</u> . My brother works at a factory.
ци́фра	figure; numeral	Я в <u>ци́фрах</u> не разбираюсь. I'm not good with <u>figures</u> .

Section Three: Nouns having separate (unrelated) meanings

Some Russian nouns have more than one meaning. Quite often these meanings are completely unrelated, and this leads to misunderstandings unless one is careful to associate the meaning with context.

Examples of such are:

- мир - 1. peace; Все люди хотят мира.
2. the world; Такого не найдёшь во всём мире.
- обстановка - 1. situation; Действуйте в зависимости от обстановки.
2. furniture; Откуда у них такая дорогая обстановка?
- расчёт - 1. calculation; Инженер Иванов сделал ошибку в своих расчётах.
2. payment (monetary); Ты получил полный расчёт?
3. gun crew (mil.); Второму расчёту приготовиться к бою!
- свет - 1. light; Не забудьте выключить свет.
2. world; Они совершили поездку вокруг света.
- утка - 1. duck; Охотник убил утку.
2. false rumor; Кто пустил эту утку?
- участок - 1. (милиции) police station; Его вызвали в участок.
2. sector of a front (mil.); На этом участке наши наступают.

Section Four: Words with Colloquial Meanings

Several words in Russian have meanings in colloquial speech (slang) which are totally different and usually unrelated to their basic meanings. This can cause difficulties when one is confronted with a conversation in which such words seem to make no sense within the context in which they appear.

Some examples of frequently used words which have special colloquial usages are:

Vocabulary Word	Basic Meaning	Colloquial Meaning
видно	is visible	evidently, apparently Он, видно, заболел. <u>Apparently</u> he's sick.
всего́	(gen. case of <u>весь</u> and <u>всё</u>) all	1. "good-bye"; Ну, пока, всего. 2. "a total of"; У меня всего 20 долларов.
дядя	uncle	fellow, guy; Тебя искал какой-то дядя.
здорово	healthily, wholesomely Note: with the stress здóрово = очень хорошо, прекрасно.	hi, hello (= здравствуй) Здорово, Петя! Он здóрово говорит по-русски.
как-нибудь	somehow, some way or other	sometime; Заходи к нам как-нибудь.
ка́ша	porridge	a mess, fouled-up situation Там сейчас такая каша!

Vocabulary Word	Basic Meaning	Colloquial Meaning
куда	where (to), whither	1. = что ты/вы?, are you kidding? - Ты уже кончил перевод? - Куда там, только начал. 2. = гораздо (with comparative) У него куда больше денег, чем у меня.
на	(preposition) in, at, on	(interjection) here (take this)! - На, бери твою книгу.
налево	to the left, on the left	"under the table, on the side"
		Он работает <u>налево</u> . He's making extra money <u>on the side</u> .
неважно	unimportant	not so good, not so hot - Как себя чувствуешь? - Неважно.
откуда	from where, whence	how; Откуда ты знаешь, что он придет завтра?
охота	hunting	with <u>не</u> - have no desire Мне <u>не охота</u> с ней говорить об этом. I <u>have no desire</u> to talk to her about that.
подходить	to approach	to fit, to suit; to be appropriate Ей не подходит этот костюм.

Vocabulary Word	Basic Meaning	Colloquial Meaning
подходящий	approaching	appropriate, right Я ищу подходящего человека на эту работу.
раз	once, one time; one	since (= так как) Раз ты это уже сделал, можешь идти домой.
скорее	comparative degree of <u>скоро</u>	rather, probably Так я <u>скорее</u> поеду в отпуск в июле. Well, I'll <u>probably</u> take leave in July.
смотря́	verbal adverb from <u>смотреть</u>	= в зависимости от - Спекта́кль, кажется, будет хороший. - <u>Смотря́</u> , кто будет играть. "The show, it seems, will be OK." " <u>Depending on</u> who's going to perform."
тип	type	"character"; Он очень странный тип.
утка	duck	false rumor (something fabricated) Этого не может быть! Это утка!
что-то	something	= почему-то <u>Что-то</u> он со мной больше не здоровается. <u>For some reason</u> he does not talk to me any more.

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. Ivan just went around the corner to get some cigarettes.

2. The youngest student in this class is two years older than I am.

3. Everything was done in accordance with the director's instructions.

4. Two months were spent on training the troops.

5. He has been working on this translation from morning until night.

6. Buy me some medicine for this headache.

7. The pilot descended from an altitude of 3,000 meters to 500 meters.

8. He shoots a rifle better than he does a pistol.

LESSON XVIII

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension

Упражнение №1. Listen to the passages recorded on your cassette as many times as necessary to complete the tasks listed below.

Япо́нское _____ 1 _____ готово предоста́вить
_____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ и техноло́гию
_____ 5 _____ 6 _____ 7 _____ 8 _____
_____ 9 _____ свиде́тельствуе́т _____ 10 _____ кабинета
_____ 11 _____ отно́сительно _____ 12 _____ со́трудниче́ства
_____ 13 _____ 14 _____, обнаро́дованное _____ 15 _____

"Нихон кэйдзай".

_____ 16 _____ предло́гом "обеспе́чения безо́пасности"
_____ 17 _____ санкцио́нирует _____ 18 _____ 19 _____ 20 _____
япо́нского _____ 21 _____, _____ 22 _____ США передово́й техноло́гии
и со́вместное _____ 23 _____ Пентаго́ном _____ 24 _____ 25 _____ разрабо́тке
_____ 26 _____ 27 _____ 28 _____ 29 _____ воору́жений.

Упражнение №2. Answer the questions pertaining to the text.

1. What is the function of words #3 and #4 in the first sentence?

2. What is the case of word #7? Why?

3. What does word #10 mean? What function does it have in the sentence?

4. What is the case of word #15? What does the phrase "обна-
родованное (15)" mean?

5. What does the phrase "(16) предлогом" mean?

6. What does word #18 mean?

7. What does the phrase "(18) (19) (20)" mean?

8. What does word #22 mean in this sentence?

9. What does word #27 mean? What is the case of this word?

Section Two: Textual Restoration

Restore the text using the words provided in the list below. The words are given in their dictionary forms and must be changed as required by the context. Each word may be used only once. There are extra words in the list. The restored text will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

_____ пилот _____
 _____ метеорологической станции сводку не позже чем _____
 _____ полета. Получив такую сводку,
 пилот знает, _____ погоду он _____
 на своем _____ и _____ какой _____
 _____ он должен лететь, чтобы избежать _____.
 Метеостанция коротко _____ все нужные
 пилоту _____ погоде.
 Но, _____ на это, пилоты часто _____
 _____ дать еще повторную, более _____
 _____ о метеоусловиях. _____
 также передают метеостанциям новые _____
 погоды _____ их полетов.

включать	время	сводка	восточный	в
встретить	высота	станция	каждый	до
получать	маршрут	условие	какой	за
просить	облачность	час	новый	на
сообщить	пилот	видно		о
заметить	сведение	несмотря		от

LESSON XIX

Homework I

Section One: Special Constructions with no-

Remember that the prefix но- with adverbs limits the meaning and often the resulting translation includes the words "a little":

Говорите погромче, вас не слышно.

Can you speak a little louder, we can't hear you.

Дай мне чуть побольше этого салата.

Give me a little more of that salad.

Also, remember that the prefix но- (when used with verbs other than going verbs) limits the duration of the action:

Посиди ещё немножко.

Stay a little while longer.

Хочешь немножко в шахматы поиграть?

How about a quick game of chess?

Also, certain adverbial constructions involve the use of the preposition по, followed by a hyphen and a dative form as follows:

по-прежнему - like before, as it used to be

по-моему (твоему, etc.) - in my (your, etc.) opinion

по-видимому - evidently, apparently

Section Two: The Effect of Word Stress on the Cases of Nouns

As you know, many word markers have more than one function (a, y, ы, etc.). Often these functions depend upon word stress.

For example:

Кто это стоит у стены? (Fem. gen. sing.)

Кто так плохо покрасил стены? (Fem. inanimate acc. pl.)

Мы долго гуляли по берегу. (Masc. dat. sing.)

Он живёт на берегу́ моря. (Masc. loc. sing.)

Он живёт где-то около этого го́рода. (Masc. gen. sing.)

Какие это красивые городá! (Masc. nom. pl.)

There are several situations in which the stress alone determines such marker functions.

Feminine Nouns

Many feminine nouns have a stress shift from singular to plural. This stress shift can cause confusion between genitive singular and nominative (or accusative inanimate) plural.

<u>Nominative singular</u>	<u>Genitive singular</u>	<u>Nominative plural</u> (& acc. inanim. pl.)
рука́	руки́	ру́ки
земля́	земли́	зе́мли

Masculine Nouns

Certain masculine nouns have an irregular plural ending in a stressed -a (soft variant -я). The only difference between the genitive singular (and thus animate accusative singular) and the nominative plural (and thus inanimate accusative plural) is the stress.

<u>Nominative singular</u>	<u>Genitive singular</u>	<u>Nominative plural</u> (& acc. inanim. pl.)
----------------------------	--------------------------	--

го́род	го́рода	города́
дом	до́ма	дома́
учи́тель	учи́теля	учите́ля

(Note: acc. pl.:
учителей)

Also, watch for the stressed -y locative endings:

Мы подходим к ле́су. (dative)

Мы были в лесу́. (locative)

Note: The word мост has a stressed ending, therefore the dative and locative sing. are identical:

Мы подходим к мосту́. (dat.)

Они стояли на мосту́. (loc.)

Section Three: Two Syllable Neuter Nouns

With almost all two syllable neuter nouns, the stress shifts to the other syllable (either forward or back) to form the nominative (and accusative) plural. Its spelling, however, is identical to the genitive singular:

Stress "forward"

<u>Nominative singular</u>	<u>Genitive singular</u>	<u>Nom. & Acc. pl.</u>
де́ло	де́ла	делá
пра́во	пра́ва	права́
мо́ре	мо́ря	моря́

Stress "back"

<u>Nominative singular</u>	<u>Genitive singular</u>	<u>Nom. & Acc. pl.</u>
окно́	окна́	о́кна
письмо́	письма́	пи́сьма
лицо́	лица́	ли́ца*

* Note: in the meaning of "a person", the acc. pl. is the same as the gen. pl. - лиц.

Section Four: Words Spelled Alike

Out of context, the following sentence can have 2 meanings:

Где замок? { Where is the castle? (за́мок)
Where is the lock? (замо́к)

There are a few words in Russian which are spelled identically, but whose meaning depends totally upon which syllable is stressed.

а́тлас - an atlas

атла́с - satin (fabric)

ду́хи - spirits (e.g. the "spirits" of the departed)

духи́ - perfume (plural only)

за́мок - a castle

замо́к - a lock

му́ка - torment

мука́ - flour

о́рган - an organ (e.g. an "organ" of the Soviet government)

орга́н - a musical organ

я пла́чу - I am crying; I cry

я плачу́ - I am paying; I pay

Infinitives of the prefixed forms of the verb ре́зать (to cut)

нареза́ть - imperfective infinitive

наре́зать - perfective infinitive

The conjugation of the verb узна́вать/узна́ть. (Remember, the dots are not usually written above the letter ë in Russian.)

<u>Imperfective</u>	<u>Perfective</u>
я узнаю́	я узнаю́
ты узнаёшь	ты узнаёшь
он/она узнаёт	он/она узнаёт
мы узнаём	мы узнаём
вы узнаёте	вы узнаёте
они узнаю́т	они узнаю́т

Also: Он стои́т на улице. But: Ско́лько это стои́т?

The above words are the most frequently used in this category and should be reviewed in case you encounter them in the future.

Section Five: Homonyms and Other Phonetic Distractors

Quite often certain words, or combinations of words, can cause confusion, especially when listening to conversations between native speakers of Russian at conversational speed. The best way to deal with this problem is to pay close attention to the context.

Examples:

до́ма (gen. sing. of дом; adverb meaning "at home")

Кто это стои́т около этого дома? (gen. sing. of дом)

Иван Петрович сейча́с дома? (adverb: "at home")

добра́ (gen. sing. of добро meaning "good" as opposed to "evil"; fem. short form of adjective добры́й)

От добра́ добра́ не ищешь. (gen. sing. of добро)
(Leave well enough alone.)

Она очень добра́. (fem. short form adj.)

лук - 1. onion; 2. bow (archery)

луг - a meadow (final г pronounced like к)

Смотри, какой большой лук!

Смотри, какой большой луг!

немой - mute (adjective referring to a person who can't talk)

не мой -- not my ... (pronounced together as one word)

Её муж немой. Her husband is mute.

Это её муж, не мой. That's her husband, not mine.

Section Six: Reference Charts

1. Common Masculine Nouns with Stressed -y Locative:

берег (на берегу)	порт (в порту)
бой (в бою - soft variant)	пост (на посту)
глаз (в глазу)	сад (в саду)
лес (в лесу)	тыл (в тылу)
мост (на мосту)	угол (на углу, в углу)
	шкаф (в шкафу)

2. Common Masculine Nouns with Stressed -a Nominative Plural

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
берег	берега
век	века
вечер	вечера
глаз	глаза

Singular

голос

город

доктор

дом

лес

номер

остров

поезд

профессор

Plural

голоса

города

доктора

дома

леса

номера

острова

поезда

профессора

Also soft variant:

учитель

учителя

3. Common Two Syllable Neuter Nouns with Stress Shift from Singular to Plural

Singular

лицо

окно

письмо

дело

место

море

поле

право

слово

Plural

лица

окна

письма

дела

места

море

поле

право

слова

4. Common Feminine Nouns with Stress Shift from Singular to Plural

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
гора	горы
доска	доски
звезда	звезды
земля	земли
нога	ноги
река	реки
рука	руки
сестра	сёстры
стена	стены
сторона	стороны
страна	страны

5. Similar Sounding Words

свет	-	1. light; 2. world
цвет	-	1. color; 2. flower
ведро	-	bucket
бедро	-	hip
отпечаток	-	print (e.g. отпечатки пальцев - fingerprints)
опечтка	-	misprint
бить	-	to hit, to beat
пить	-	to drink
лить	-	to pour
класть	-	to put, to lay
красть	-	to steal
красть	-	to paint
сесть	-	to sit down
съесть	-	to eat

отставля́ть/отста́вить - to set aside, to put aside

оставля́ть/оста́вить - to leave (transitive)

останавли́вать/останови́ть - to stop (transitive)

отстава́ть/отста́ть - to lag, to fall behind

остава́ться/оста́ться - to stay, to remain

6. Masculine Soft Sign Nouns

автомобиль

гвоздь (nail)

госпиталь

гость

день

дождь

контро́ль

корабль

лагерь

ли́вень (downpour, heavy rain)

ноль

нуль

огонь

по́лдень

пусть

реме́нь (strap, belt)

рубль

руль

словарь

тунне́ль

уго́ль (coal)

у́ровень (level)

фона́рь (lantern)

яко́рь (anchor)

Also: several nouns derived from verbs indicating profession or activity:

жи́тель (resident)
зри́тель (viewer, onlooker)
писа́тель
покупа́тель
председа́тель
руководи́тель
строи́тель
учи́тель
чита́тель

7. Feminine Soft Sign Nouns

боле́знь	площа́дь
бо́ль	по́дпись
вла́сть	пы́ль
га́вань	ро́ль
ги́бель	связа́ь
гру́дь	се́ть (net, network)
гря́зь	сме́рть
дро́зь (fraction)	ста́ль
за́пись	сте́пень
жизнь	су́ть
кровать	те́нь
кро́вь	тре́ть
мете́ль	це́ль
мише́нь (practice target)	ча́сть
мы́сль	че́тверть
нефть	
о́бувь	
осе́нь	
оче́редь	
памя́ть	

Also: 1. the suffix -ость indicates a feminine noun (EXCEPTION: ГОСТЬ)

Examples: ГЛУ́ПОСТЬ, НОВОСТЬ, etc.

2. If a sibilant appears immediately before the -ь, the noun is feminine.

Examples: МЫШЬ (mouse)

ВЕЩЬ

НОЧЬ

ЛОЖЬ (lie)

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word information sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. Having entered the room, I saw that the window had been opened.

2. Swimming against the current, he soon became very tired.

3. The second largest city in the country is older than Moscow by at least ten years.

4. He bought the greater part of his books in Poland because they are a lot cheaper there.

5. Having lost the money which he'd won, he left.

6. How much younger is Nina than Tanya.

7. These two countries are always at war with one another.

8. They each brought two magazines.

LESSON XIX

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

В организацио́нном(1) отноше́нии Военно-Морской Флот(2) (ВМФ) СССР состоит из(3) Северного, Тихоокеа́нского(4), Черномо́рского(5), и Балти́йского флотов. Каждый флот на́зван(6) в соотве́тствии с(7) названием того океа́на или моря, где находятся его(8) базы, одна(9) из(10) которых(11) является главной.

Флот — опера́тивное объедине́ние Военно-Морского Флота(12) страны, предна́значенное(13) для(14) веде́ния(15) военных действий(16) на(17) да́нном(18) морском (океа́нском) театре военных действий(19). Каждый флот имеет в своём(20) соста́ве(21) соединения (эска́дры) и части (корабли) различных родов сил.

Руководи́т(22) ВМФ главнокома́нующий(23), являющийся одно-временно(24) заместителем министра обороны СССР. Главнокома́нующему(25) ВМФ подчиня́ется Главный штаб и центра́льные управле́ния ВМФ.

With regard to _____ (1), the Soviet _____ (2) (VMF) consists _____ (3) the Northern, _____ (4), _____ (5) and Baltic Fleets. Each fleet _____ (6) _____ (7) the name of the ocean or sea where _____ (8) bases are located, _____ (9) _____ (10) _____ (11) is the main (base).

A fleet is a strategic operational formation of the National _____ (12), _____ (13) _____ (14) _____ (15) military _____ (16) _____ (17) the (its) _____ (18) sea (or oceanic) theater of military _____ (19). Each fleet has in _____ (20) _____ (21) formations (squadrons) and units (ships) of different combat arms.

The VMF _____ (22) the _____ (23) who is _____ (24) a Deputy Minister of Defense of the USSR. The Main Staff and the Central Directorates of the VMF are under the command of the _____ (25) of the VMF.

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. В организационном отношении Военно-Морской Флот (ВМФ) СССР состоит из Северного, Тихоокеанского, Черноморского и Балтийского флотов.
 - a. Explain the derivation of the adjectives Тихоокеанский and Черноморский.
 - b. What is the case of the word флот at the end of the sentence? Why is it in that case?
 - c. Why is the word флот at the end of the sentence in the plural?

2. Каждый флот назван в соответствии с названием того океана или моря, где находятся его базы, одна из которых является главной.
 - a. In what case is the word название in the sentence? Why?
 - b. Which word in the sentence does the pronoun его refer to?
 - c. Which word does the word который modify in the sentence?

3. Флот – оперативное объединение Военно-Морского Флота страны, предназначенное для ведения военных действий на данном морском (океанском) театре военных действий.
 - a. What is the predicate of the sentence?
 - b. Explain the grammatical form предназначенный in the sentence.
 - c. Which word does it modify?
 - d. Is the participle предназначенный active or passive in the sentence?
 - e. In what case is the word ведение in the sentence? Why?
 - f. Explain the meaning of the preposition на.
 - g. Is the word данный in the sentence an adjective or a participle?

4. Каждый флот имеет в своём составе соединения (эскадры) и части (корабли) различных родов сил.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - In what case are the words соединение and часть in the sentence? Why?
 - Give the case of the word состав in the sentence.
5. Руководит ВМФ главнокомандующий, являющийся одновременно заместителем министра обороны СССР.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - Explain the derivation of the word главнокомандующий.
 - What is the grammatical form являющийся?
 - Which word does the word являющийся modify?
 - What part of speech is the word одновременно?
 - In what case is the word заместитель in the sentence? Why?
6. Главнокомандующему ВМФ подчиняется главный штаб и центральные управления ВМФ.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - In what case is the word главнокомандующий in the sentence? Why?
 - Give the gender and number of the word управление in the sentence.
 - Compare the word order and construction between the Russian sentence and its English translation.

LESSON XX

Homework I

Section One: Diminutives

Native speakers of Russian often use "diminutives" to express the smallness of an object or to convey affection or intimacy toward a person or object.

1. Expressing Smallness

Note the difference in meaning when diminutives express smallness:

<u>Regular form</u>	<u>Diminutive</u>
стол - a table	сто́лик - a small table
дом - a house	до́мик - a small house
река - a river	ре́чка - a small river
город - a city	городо́к - a town

Note: Even though diminutives themselves often express smallness, such combinations as маленький столик are common and are not considered to be redundant in Russian.

2. Expressing Attitudes of the Speaker (Affection, Endearment, etc.)

Diminutives are also used in conversational Russian to convey the idea of affection or intimacy. Thus, they are frequently used when addressing loved ones, close friends and children:

Какой у вас красивый са́дик!

What a lovely garden you have!

Коля, иди помой ручки!

Kolya, go wash your hands!

3. Formation of Diminutives

Diminutives are usually formed by adding suffixes to nouns as follows:¹

<u>Masculine Nouns</u>	<u>Feminine Nouns</u>	<u>Neuter Nouns</u>
-ок (лесо́к)	-ка (ре́чка) ¹	-ко (у́шко) ¹
-ик (до́мик)	-ечка (ко́шечка) ¹	
-ёк (паренёк)	-очка (у́лочка)	
-чик (лимо́нчик)	-ушка (стару́шка) ¹	
-очек (цвето́чек)	-енька (тёте́нька)	
-ушек (хле́бушек)		

Section Two: "False" Diminutives

Not all words which look like diminutives are in fact diminutives. For example, you have seen that suffixes such as -ка, -чик, -ок, etc. often denote diminutives.

Examples:

-ок	лес	- diminutive	лесо́к
-чик	костю́м	- diminutive	костю́мчик
-ка	гора́	- diminutive	го́рка

¹ If the noun stem ends in г, к or х, they change to ж, ч, and ш respectively.

г — ж	друг — дружо́к; нога́ — но́жка
к — ч	река́ — ре́чка; таба́к — табачо́к
х — ш	у́хо — у́шко; стару́ха — стару́шка

However, such endings may simply be part of a root word and not diminutive suffixes:

- ок игро́к - a card player (NOT a diminutive of игра)
- чик передáтчик - a radio transmitter (NOT a diminutive of передача)
- ка подгото́вка - preparation (there is no such word as подгото́ва)

One way to determine whether a noun is a diminutive form or a root word is to check the abbreviation(s) in the dictionary. Quite often the abbreviation уменьш. (diminutive) will appear, or you can tell by the translation given that the form is a diminutive.

One word of caution: due to the numerous possibilities, only a relatively small number of diminutives actually appear in standard dictionaries. If you are in doubt as to whether a word is a diminutive, try to find a root word. If there is no separate entry for the word and you can identify a root word and a diminutive suffix, it is probably a diminutive.

Examples: перево́дик, пу́шечка, комна́тушка, etc.

Section Three: More "False" Diminutives.

Another category of "false" diminutives includes words which are formed (as diminutives) from nouns, but which take on a completely different (and often unrelated) meaning.

Examples:

- воро́нка - a funnel (NOT a small crow, from воро́на)
- ёлка - a Christmas tree (NOT a small fir tree, from ель)
- кры́шка - a lid, a cover (NOT a small roof, from кры́ша)
- ла́мпочка - a light bulb (NOT a small lamp, from ла́мпа)
- маши́нка - a typewriter (NOT a small car, from маши́на)
- мужи́к - a peasant, a common fellow (NOT a diminutive of му́ж)

но́жка - 1. a small leg (child's, etc.) — a true diminutive
2. the leg of a table (но́жка стола)

ру́чка - 1. a small hand (child's, etc.) — a true diminutive
2. a handle (of a door, etc.) (e.g. ручка двери)
3. a pen

спíнка - 1. a small back (child's, etc.) — true diminutive
2. the back of a chair, etc. (спíнка кресла)

Section Four: Diminutive Forms of Adjectives and Adverbs

You should be aware that some adjectives and adverbs also have diminutive forms. Adjectival diminutives are usually recognizable by the insertion of the syllable -еньк- (or -оньк-) between the stem and the adjectival ending:²

ми́лый - ми́ленький

у́мный - у́мненький

но́вый - но́венький

молодо́й -молоде́нький

худо́й - ху́денький

etc.

² The diminutive adjective хороше́нький has taken on the meaning of "pretty":

У тебя хороше́нькая до́чка. - You have a pretty daughter.

Also, мале́нький now means "small".

Another type of diminutive adjective has the infix -оват- (or -еват-) between the stem and the adjectival ending. These generally correspond to English adjectives ending in "-ish" or "rather ...".

красный - красновáтый (reddish)

слабый - слабовáтый (rather weak)

Sometimes they are translated by a completely different adjective:

тёплый - тепловáтый (lukewarm, tepid)

Some adverbs also have a diminutive form:

немного - немнóжко (and немнóжечко)

быстро - бы́стренько

слабо - слабовáто

Section Five: Direct Objects after Negated Transitive Verbs

Sometimes the genitive case is used instead of the accusative when expressing the direct object after a negated transitive verb.

Examples:

Он не знает русского языка.

Я вообще не ем мяса.

In most instances there is no significant difference between the use of the genitive and the accusative.

Я не читал этих писем. = Я не читал эти письма.

There are however, certain guidelines in selecting one case over the other.

The Use of the Genitive

The genitive case is preferred when:

- 1) the sentence contains the particle ни or a word incorporating this particle (никто, ничего, никогда, никакой, etc.):

Никто этого не говорил.

Он не сказал ни слова об этом.

Я никогда этого не делаю.

- 2) The direct object is a geographical place name or a person's name:

Кто не понимает этого, тот не понимает Англию.

Я давно не видел Ольгу Павловну.

Ultimately, although there are certain specific situations in which one case is preferred, you should be aware of the fact that either case is being used in most situations. Also, the accusative case is being used more and more often in contemporary Russian, especially in the spoken language.

- 3) the existence of something is in question:

Какая доска? Я не вижу доски.

- 4) the sentence contains a verb of perception, thought, wishing or expectation (e.g. видеть, слышать, понимать, думать, знать, хотеть, желать, ожидать etc.):

Я не желаю ему неприятностей.

Он этого города не знает.

Я музыки не слышал.

- 5) the object is an abstract (rather than a concrete object):

Она не скрывала радостии.

Здесь шумаа не любят.

Она не теряет надеждыи.

The Use of the Accusative

The accusative is preferred when:

- 1) the direct object is a specific, concrete object (rather than an abstract). The meaning here is "specifically this one thing, not just any thing":

Он не кончил работую, которую ему задали.

Девочка не выпила молокоа, которое мать ей дала.

Я твою газетую не брал!

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical expansion and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. I received your letter from the sixth of June on the tenth.

2. I always put my things where they belong.

3. Where is the key to my car?

4. You have nothing to worry about, this dog doesn't bite.

5. Although our boss is younger than yours, he seems to be a lot stricter.

6. Not speaking Russian, I couldn't explain to him the mistakes he had made in his presentation.

7. Knowing that he would come at half-past five, I placed the signed papers on his desk.

8. The longer I know you, the less I understand you.

LESSON XX

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension

Упражнение №1. Listen to the passage recorded on your cassette and restore all of the missing elements.

_____ 1 _____ 2 _____ 3
Лагорио _____ 4 _____ 5 Риме главнокомандующего
_____ 6 _____ 7 НАТО _____ 8
_____ 9 _____ 10 зоне Европы
адмирала Кроу. _____ 11 _____ 12 беседы _____ 13
рассмотрены _____ 14 _____ 15 обеспечения
_____ 16 _____ 17 _____ 18 объектов и НАТО
_____ 19 _____ 20 , обсуждена́ военно-политическая
_____ 21 _____ 22 _____ 23 _____ 24 Средиземноморье.
_____ 25 _____ 26 _____ 27
_____ 28 _____ 29 ВМС Италии адмирал Монасси.

Упражнение №2. Answer the questions pertaining to the passage.

1. What is the case of word #2? Why?

2. What is the case of word #7? Why?

3. What does the expression "(11) (12) беседы" mean?

4. What is the English cognate of word #17?

5. What is the case of word #20?

6. Translate the last sentence of this passage.

Упражнение №3. Listen to the passage and supply the essential elements of information.

What?

Who?

Where?

Who survived?

Section Two: Preparation of Oral Reports

Select a news item on any subject from a media source (radio, TV, press). Prepare a three minute talk on that item to be presented in Russian during the Comprehension/Communication component. Be sure to include the essential elements of information: who, what, where, when, and why.

You may use notes, but do not read the talk. Be prepared to answer questions posed by your instructor and classmates.

LESSON XXI

Homework I

Section One: Жаргонные слова (Colloquial Words)

Russian has an abundance of so-called "slang" words. Formation and active usage of such words are beyond the scope of a basic course. However, due to the high frequency of "slang" in conversational Russian, several colloquial terms are included in this lesson for recognition. Remember: when you hear such words, try to guess at the meaning according to the context in which they appear.

Colloquial Words	Meaning(s)	Examples
ерунда́	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> foolishness, nonsense (= мелочь) said of something of no importance, having no significance. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Что за ерунда́? What <u>kind of nonsense</u> is that? - Я тебе еще должен 50 копеек. - Да брось ты! Это ерунда́! - I still owe you 50 kopecks. - Oh, forget it! That's nothing!
как раз	exactly, precisely	<p>Это <u>как раз</u> то, что я имел в виду. That's <u>just</u> what I had in mind.</p>
мелочь	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> change, small change. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Дай-ка пятак. У меня мелочи нет. Hey, give me a nickel. I don't have any change.

Colloquial Words	Meaning(s)	Examples
мелочь	2. trifle (same as second meaning of <u>ерунда</u> above)	2. Да что ты там волнуешься? Это <u>мелочь</u> . What are you worrying about? That's <u>nothing</u> .
нэту	colloquial variant of <u>нет</u> (in the meaning of "there isn't, there aren't")	У меня больше <u>нэту</u> денег. I <u>don't have</u> any money left.
пáрень (masc.)	guy, fellow	Он хороший <u>пáрень</u> . He's a good <u>guy</u> .
полно́	= очень много	У него <u>полно́</u> денег. He's got <u>mountains</u> of money.
получка	payday, paycheck	Ваня, когда у нас <u>получка</u> ? Vanya, when's <u>payday</u> ?
помимо	1. = кроме 1. without someone's knowledge	1. <u>Помимо</u> этого, он еще сказал следующее. <u>Besides</u> that, he said the following. 2. Это было сделано <u>помимо</u> меня. That was done without my knowledge. (or: They bypassed me.)
почём	= сколько стоит	<u>Почём</u> эти туфли? How much are these shoes?

чепуха́	(= ерунда́ in both meanings) 1. nonsense, rubbish 2. trifle (something having no significance)	1. Я этому не верю. Это <u>чепуха́!</u> I don't believe that. That's <u>rubbish!</u> 2. Да что ты? Это <u>чепуха́!</u> Come on! That's <u>nothing!</u>
чушь (fem.)	nonsense, rubbish	Какая <u>чушь!</u> What <u>nonsense!</u>
шту́ка	1. (= вещь) thing 2. used in counting items	1. Кто тебе дал эту <u>шту́ку?</u> Who gave you this <u>thing?</u> 2. Дайте мне 10 <u>штук.</u> Give me 10 <u>of them.</u>

Section Two: Colloquial Expressions

Note the usage of the following expressions/constructions which appear frequently in conversational Russian.

The word кое (+ кто, что, где etc.) can replace the use of -то:

кое-кто = кто-то

кое-что = что-то

кое-где = где-то

etc.

не сто́ит

This expression can be followed by an infinitive (imperfective) or by the genitive case in the meaning of "worth":

Это ломаного гроша́ не сто́ит.

That's not worth a plugged nickel.

Это ни черта́ не сто́ит.

That's not worth a damn!

Не сто́ит об этом волновáться.

That's not worth getting upset about.

ни черта́ = абсолю́тно ничего

Он ни черта́ не знает.

He doesn't know a damned thing.

пока что - a colloquial equivalent of пока in the meanings "for the time being", "for now", etc.

Пока что всё идёт хорошо.

So far everything's OK.

уго́дно - This particle is used in colloquial Russian as a synonym for любо́й.

Ты можешь спрашивать кого уго́дно, всё равно ответа не получишь.

You can ask anyone you want, you still won't get an answer.

Задавайте какие уго́дно вопросы.

Ask any questions you want.

Note also the following expressions with уго́дно:

Как вам уго́дно.

As you please; whatever you say.

Что вам уго́дно?

Can I help you? What can I do for you?

Two additional forms of что in conversational Russian.

что = почему

Что ты молчишь?

Why don't you say anything?

Что ты всё время повторяешь одно и то же?

Why are you always saying that?

Also, the construction что ли is used in various ways to intensify a question (such as English "or what") as well as a synonym for может быть in certain situations.

Ну, где будем обедать? Здесь, что ли?

Well, where should we eat? How about here?

Ты что, с ума сошёл, что ли?

Have you gone nuts, or what?

Special use of не - не sometimes conveys the idea of "wrong". Note:

Ты не туда смотришь.

You're looking the wrong way.

Ты не то купила.

You bought the wrong thing.

Вы не так перевели это слово.

You translated this word wrong.

Мы не туда попали.

We've come to the wrong place.

Section Three: Supplementary List of Russian Colloquialisms

Vocabulary item	Meaning	Examples
барахл ^о	junk, stuff	- На что мне такое <u>барахл^о</u> ? - What do I need with that <u>stuff</u> ?
да ^р ом	(literally: free of charge, for free) (slang: = напрáсно in vain)	- Так это ты деньги <u>да^ром</u> тратишь на это. - You're <u>wasting</u> money on that. (or: You're spending money <u>in vain</u> .)
жратв ^а	food, chow	- А <u>жратв^а</u> -то будет? - Yeah, but are they going to have <u>chow</u> there?
жрать	(literally: this verb is used instead of <u>есть</u> when referring to animals) slang: = <u>есть</u>	- Ты что, Ва́ся, опять <u>жрёшь</u> ? - What, are you <u>eating</u> again, Vasya?
захвор ^а ть	= заболеть in the meaning of "to get sick"	- Ты что, опять <u>захворáл</u> ? - Are you <u>sick</u> again?
зря	= напрáсно in vain	Я <u>зря</u> туда ходил. I <u>wasted my time</u> going there. (I went for nothing.)

Vocabulary Item	Meaning	Examples
надрáться	(= напíться) to get drunk, to get smashed	Ой, как я вчера <u>надрáлся!</u> Boy, did I <u>get smashed</u> yesterday!
нажрáться or обожрáться	to overeat, to stuff oneself	Сегодня я так <u>нажрáлся</u> , что ничего не буду есть до утра. I <u>stuffed myself</u> today and I'm not going to eat until tomorrow.
недáром	not for nothing, not without a reason, for a purpose	Так он <u>недáром</u> к нам заходил! He <u>had a reason</u> for stopping in to see us!
пустякí (m.pl.)	trifle, nothing important	Так это <u>пустякí!</u> Oh, that's <u>nothing!</u> (Note: пара пустякóв = child's play)
<u>смывáться</u> <u>смы́ться</u>	to "split", to "cut out", to disappear	Куда он <u>смы́лся?</u> Where did he <u>disappear</u> to?
<u>шáмать</u> <u>пошáмать</u>	to eat	Ну, пошли! <u>Шáмать</u> пора! Well, let's go! It's time to eat! (Note: шамóвка = жратвá)

Section Four: "Name-Calling" in Russian

As with almost all languages, Russian has a number of terms which are used to refer to people in a derogatory manner. These terms appear rather often in colloquial Russian and sometimes completely out of context. Therefore, they can present obstacles to comprehension and are thus presented here as supplementary material.

NOTE: Although all of the following terms may be found in a Russian-English dictionary, they may be offensive to some people. Consequently, they are presented for your information only and you will not be held responsible for knowing them.

балда́ (m & f)	blockhead
болва́н (m)	dolt
ве́дьма (f)	witch (a mean, bad tempered woman)
гад (m)	skunk
дармо́ед (m)	bum, sponger, freeloader
дермо́едка (f)	
мерза́вец (m)	rat; scoundrel
мерза́вка (f)	
наха́л (m)	lout (an imprudent person)
наха́лка (f)	
негодя́й (m)	a good for nothing bum; (a worth
негодя́йка (f)	(a worthless person)
подле́ц (m) (fem. adj. по́длая)	rat (similar to мерзавец)
проходи́мец (m)	rogue; climber (a person cap-
проходи́мка (f)	able of doing anything to get ahead)
сво́лочь (m & f)	scum; swine; S.O.B.
скоти́на (m & f)	beast (a crude, stupid person)

су́кин сын (m)	S.O.B.
хам (m)	bum (a rude, very impolite person)
ха́мка (f)	
холе́ра (m & f)	derrogatory term for a nasty person
холу́й (m)	groveller (a slovenly & subservient man)
шалопа́й (m)	loafer (a good-for-nothing person)

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical component and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below with Russian in writing.

1. She sees so poorly that she has to be led by the hand.

2. I had a wonderful time; now it is time for me to go.

3. In the fall it rained nearly every day.

4. He was late to work because his car wouldn't start.

5. In spite of the doctors advice, he got out of bed and went for a walk.

6. He was walking very fast and did not see that I was running after him.

7. We must drive faster; we have covered only fifteen miles.

8. They are in need of nothing.

LESSON XXI

Homework II

Section One: Translation

Use your Russian-English dictionary to complete the following translation. Note that the underlined words and phrases in the Russian text correspond to the blanks in the partial English translation. The translation will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Главной ударной(1) силой советского Военно-Морского Флота (ВМФ) являются атомные подводные лодки, вооружённые(2) различными(3) ракетами и торпéдами. Эти подводные лодки могут наносить удары(4) по(5) морским и назёмным(6) объектам с(7) дальних(8) расстояний(9) как с(10) надвóдного, так и с(10) подводного положения. Замечательное(11) свóйство атомных подводных лодок заключáется(12) в(13) неограниченной(14) дальности плáвания(15).

Надводные корабли советского флота имеют различное(16) назначение(17). Наибóлее(18) эффективными боевыми кораблями являются ракетные корабли и катерá, вооружённые(19) ракетами для(20) поражения(21) морских, воздушных и береговóх целей.

В составе(22) ВМФ имеется также морская ракетноóсная авиация, которая может действовать в(23) любóх условиях погоды, обнаруживать(24) вражеские надводные и подводные цели и поражать их ракетами(25). Кроме этого, в(26) ВМФ входят(27) береговые(28) ракетно-артиллерийские войска и части морской пехоты.

The main _____ (1) force of the Soviet Navy (VMF) is atomic submarines _____ (2) _____ (3) missiles and torpedoes. These submarines can _____ (4) _____ (5) sea and _____ (6) targets _____ (7) _____ (8) _____ (9) _____ (10) the surface and _____ (10) underwater. The _____ - _____ (11) quality of atomic submarines _____ (12) _____ (13) (their) _____ (14) _____ (15).

Surface vessels of the Soviet Navy have _____ (16) _____ (17). The _____ (18) effective combat vessels are the missile ships and cutters, _____ (19) with rockets _____ (20) the _____ (21) of targets at sea, in the air and on shore.

_____ (22) of the VMF there is also the Rocket-Armed Naval Aviation, which can operate _____ (23) any weather conditions, _____ (24) enemy surfaced and submerged targets, and destroy them with _____ (25). In addition, _____ (28) rocket-artillery troops and units of marines _____ (27) _____ (26) the VMF.

Section Two: Analysis

Answer the following text related questions. A discussion will take place during the Reinforcement component.

1. Главной ударной силой советского Военно-Морского Флота (ВМФ) являются атомные подводные лодки, вооруженные различными ракетами и торпедами.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. Explain the grammatical form вооружённый in the sentence.
 - d. Is the word вооружённый an active or passive participle?
 - e. In what case is the word сила in the sentence? Why?

2. Эти подводные лодки могут наносить удары по морским и наземным объектам с дальних расстояний как с надводного, так и с подводного положения.
 - a. What is the subject of this sentence?
 - b. What is the predicate?
 - c. Explain the meaning of the preposition по.
 - d. Give the gender and number of the word расстояние in the sentence.
 - e. In what case is the word расстояние in the sentence? Why?

3. Замечательное свойство атомных подводных лодок заключается в неограниченной дальности плавания.
 - a. What is the subject of the sentence?
 - b. In what case is the word лодка in the sentence? Why?
 - c. Give the case of the word дальность in the sentence.
 - d. Why is the word плавание in the Genitive case?

4. Надводные корабли советского флота имеют различное назначение.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - In what case is the word назначение in the sentence? Why?
 - Explain the meaning of the prefix над- in the word надводный.
5. Наиболее эффективными боевыми кораблями являются ракетные корабли и катера, вооружённые ракетами для поражения морских, воздушных и береговых целей.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - What part of speech is the word наиболее?
 - In what case is the word поражение in the sentence? Why?
 - Which word does the word вооружённый refer to?
6. В составе ВМФ имеется также морская ракетно-авиация, которая может действовать в любых условиях погоды, обнаруживать вражеские надводные и подводные цели и поражать их ракетами.
- What is the subject of the first clause?
 - What is the subject of the second clause?
 - What is the predicate of the second clause?
 - Which word does the word который refer to in the sentence?
 - Give the gender, number and case of the word условие in the sentence.

7. Кроме этого, в ВМФ входят береговые ракетно-артиллерийские войска и части морской пехоты.
- What is the subject of the sentence?
 - In what case is the word часть in the sentence?
 - Why is the word этот in the Genitive case?

LESSON XXII

Homework I

Section One: Set Expressions

When translating from Russian into English, you will encounter certain expressions which have "stock translations" into English. These English equivalents often do not remotely resemble a word-for-word translation of the Russian.

Examples:

комендантский час* - curfew

военное положение - martial law

часы пик - rush hour

передний край обороны - FEBA (Forward edge of the
battle area)

Rather than memorizing an endless list of such expressions, be aware that they exist. When translating from Russian, watch for instances in which a literal translation does not seem to make sense. Then carefully read the entire dictionary entry for the words involved. Such standard, set expressions are usually listed in the dictionary entry of one (or more) of the words which comprise them.

* The word комендант is itself a false cognate. It means a superintendent or an official in charge of (military) quarters. It does not mean "commandant" in the sense of a commanding officer of a military installation.

Section Two: Some Colloquial Expressions in Russian

Spoken Russian has an abundance of colloquial expressions. Some of these are similar to English expressions (e.g. что посеешь, то и пожнешь = you reap what you sow). Unfortunately, these are few. Many colloquial Russian expressions have meanings which are totally unrelated to the meaning of the basic words which comprise them.

Example: Кот наплакал

Literally this phrase would mean "the cat cried". Its meaning is: "there is very little (of)" (e.g. У меня денег кот наплакал - I'm broke)

Several expressions of this type are presented in this lesson for recognition purposes. When you encounter such expressions and they make no sense if translated literally, look up the words comprising them in your dictionary and carefully read the entire entry, looking for set expressions involving these words.

EXPRESSION	MEANINGS	EXAMPLES
быть под мухой (муха = fly)	to be tipsy to be under the influence (of alcohol)	Давай поговорим об этом потом. Я сейчас <u>под мухой</u> . Let's talk about that later. I'm feeling <u>no</u> <u>pain</u> right now.
вот тебе на!	how about that! well, what do you know?!	Его опять назначили туда? Вот тебе на! He's been assigned there again? How about that?!
иметь зуб (на кого-то)	to have it in for someone; to have something against someone	Что же ты всегда высту- паешь против него? Ты что, <u>зуб на него имеешь</u> , что ли? How come you're always talking him down? Have you got it in for him?

EXPRESSION	MEANINGS	EXAMPLE
нести чушь (чепуху́)	to talk non- sense	Что ты за <u>чушь несёшь</u> ? What kind of <u>nonsense</u> is that?
<u>перегиба́ть</u> <u>перегну́ть</u> палку	to go to far; to overdo some- thing	Боюсь, что ты здесь <u>палку</u> <u>перегну́л</u> . I'm afraid you've <u>gone too</u> far with that.
по ша́пке дать (кому-то)	to "give it" to someone; to "stick" it to someone; to hit someone (hard)	Он мне здо́рово <u>по ша́пке</u> <u>дал!</u> He really <u>laid one on me!</u>
<u>стреля́ть</u> <u>стрельну́ть</u> сигарету	to bum a ciga- rette	Он у меня всегда стреляет. He's always <u>bumming ciga-</u> <u>rettes</u> from me.

The above examples should suffice to show you that the meanings of such set expressions often differ drastically from the meaning of the words comprising them. Again, when encountering such expressions, consult your dictionary and always consider the context in which they appear.

Section Three: Abbreviations and Acronyms

Quite often students encounter difficulties in comprehending abbreviations and acronyms in spoken Russian. Some of these are pronounced as words, while others are simply a combination of letters.

Some common abbreviations and acronyms are given in the sentences below.

Владимир Михайлович долго работал корреспондентом ТАСС.

Сколько членов в ЦК КПСС?

Столица ФРГ - Бонн. Столица ГДР - восточный Берлин.

Его исключили из комсомола.

Её дядя работает в обкоме партии.

В СССР, вместо ферм, есть совхозы и колхозы.

Сколько членов в политбюро ЦК КПСС?

You should be aware that abbreviations and acronyms appear quite frequently in contemporary conversational Russian. If you hear a combination of letters (or syllables) which you cannot decipher, refer to the "Glossary of Russian Abbreviations and Acronyms" compiled by the Aerospace Technology Division Reference Department (Library of Congress, Washington D.C.) The following tables presents some of the more frequently used military abbreviations and acronyms.

(Note: This material is supplementary and you are not responsible for it. You should, however, keep it for future reference)

1. Common Soviet Military Abbreviations

ABBREVIATION	PRONOUNCED	FULL TERM	MEANING
АК	а-ка	автомат Калашникова	Kalashnikov automatic weapon
БК	бэ-ка	боекомплект	unit of fire (artillery) combat load
БМП	бэ-эм-пэ	боевая машина пехоты	APC - armored per- sonnel carrier
ВПП	вэ-пэ-пэ	взлётно- посадочная полоса	runway; airstrip
БРДМ	бэ-рэ-дэ-эм	Боевая разведывательно-дозорная машина	armored recon- naissance pat- rol vehicle
БТР	бэ-тэ-эр	бронетран- спортёр	APC
ВВС	вэ-вэ-эс	военно- воздушные силы	Air Force
ВМФ	вэ-эм-эф	военно- морской флот	Navy
ГРУ	1. гру 2. гэ-эр-у	Главное разведывательное управление	Main Intelli- gence Directo- rate
ЗСУ	зэ-эс-у	зенитная самоходная установка	Self-propelled antiaircraft artillery mount

ABBREVIATION	PRONOUNCED	FULL TERM	MEANING
КНП	ка-эн-пэ	командо-наблюдательный пункт	COP (Command Observation Point)
КП	ка-пэ	командный пункт	CP (Command Post)
НП	эн-пэ	наблюдательный пункт	OP (Observation Point)
ОВ	о-вэ	отравляющее вещество, огнеопасное вещество	toxic chemical agents; flammable substances
ОМП	о-эм-пэ	оружие массового поражения	weapons of mass destruction
ПВО	пэ-вэ-о	противовоздушная оборона	Air Defense
ПК	пэ-ка	пулемёт Калашникова	Kalashnikov machine gun
ПТУРС	птурс	противотанковый управляемый реактивный снаряд	anti-tank guided missile
РПГ	эр-пэ-гэ	ручная противотанковая граната	anti-tank hand grenade
СА	эс-а	Советская Армия	Soviet Army
САУ	сау	самоходная артиллерийская установка	SP mount (self-propelled artillery gun mount)
УЗ	у-зэ	участок заражения	nuclear contaminated area

2. Common Soviet Military Acronyms

ACRONYM	FULL TERM	MEANING
авиаполк	авиационный полк	Air Regiment
артподготóвка	артиллерийская подготовка	Artillery preparation
военкомáт	военный комиссариáт	draft board; military enlistment & registration center
геншта́б	генеральный штаб	general staff
замполит	заместитель командира по политической части	political officer
зампотéх	заместитель командира по технической части	(technical) maintenance officer
комбáт	командир батальона	battalion commander
комд́ив	командир дивизии; командир дивизиона	division commander; artillery battalion commander
медперсона́л	медицинский персонал	medics; medical personnel
медпúнкт	медицинский пункт	medical aid station
подлóдка	подводная лодка	sub; submarine
разведдáнные	развéдывательные данные	intelligence data; "intel"
эсми́нец	эска́дренный миноно́сец	destroyer

Section Three: Written Assignment

Review the lexical component and word formation sections of the Vocabulary component and then translate the sentences below into Russian in writing.

1. We had just gotten up from the table when we heard over the radio that hundreds of thousands of people die from hunger each day.

2. In spite of the fact that the road was covered with snow the soldiers cut off the town from the enemy forces.

3. He is easily distinguished from others by his height.

4. I would be delighted to meet with him again.

5. Sit down, please. Make yourself at home.

6. Whoever might invite them, they always stay at home.

7. Is this film worth seeing? I didn't like it.

8. All of the shoes costing 12 rubles or less were sold by ten o'clock.

LESSON XXII

Homework II

Section One: Aural Comprehension

Упражнение №1. Listen to the passage taken from a Soviet newspaper recorded on your cassette and complete the passage below. You may listen to the tape as many times as necessary.

_____ и НАТО
1 _____ 2 _____
активизи́руют _____ приготавли́ения
3 _____
4 _____ 5 _____
Норве́гии, отводя́ _____
6 _____ 7 _____
8 _____ 9 _____
10 _____ 11 _____ 12 _____
13 _____ милитаристских _____ 14 _____
15 _____ 16 _____
17 _____ географической близости к _____
Советскому Союзу. _____ также добился от
18 _____
Норве́гии согласи́я на _____
19 _____ 20 _____

_____ 21 _____ 22 _____ 23 _____
 _____ 24 _____ 25 _____, оснащённых
 радиоэлектронным _____ 26 _____ 27 _____ сбора
 разведывательных данных об СССР.

Упражнение №2. Answer the following questions pertaining to the passage.

1. What does " _____ 3 _____ приготовления" mean?

2. What part of speech is "отводя́"?

3. What does "отводя́ _____ 8 _____ 9 _____ 10 _____" mean?

4. What does " _____ 15 _____ 16 _____" mean in this sentence?

5. What is the case of the word "согла́сия"?

6. What is the case of the word # 19?

7. What does "добился от Норвегии согласия на _____" mean? _____ 19 _____ 20
 _____ 21

8. What part of speech is "оснащённых"?

Section Two: Textual Restoration

Restore the text using the words provided in the list below. The words are given in their dictionary forms and must be changed as required by the context. Each word may be used only once. There are extra words in the list. The restored text will be checked during the Reinforcement component.

Мотострелковые _____
 наступление. Позиции противника были _____
 флангов и с фронта, _____ успеха.
 Старший начальник _____ следующую атаку _____
 _____ огнем гаубиц.
 _____ была поставлена артиллерейскому
 дивизиону, которым командует капитан В. Денисов. Совершив много-
 километров _____, артиллеристы быстро _____
 огневые позиции и _____ точным _____ разведки
 _____ несколько опорных пунктов и мино-
 мётную батарею _____. Свое _____
 артиллеристы _____ с большим успехом.

атаковать	поддержать	задание	марш	по
вести	решать	задача	без	с
выполнить	уничтожить	сопротивление	в	
занять	данные	подразделение	для	
оказать	движение	противник	однако	

A P P E N D I C E S

APPENDIX A. PREPOSITION AND CASE GOVERNMENT

1. Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Genitive Case

PREPOSITION	MEANING(S) OF PREPOSITION	EXAMPLE OF USAGE
БЕЗ	without	Я пью чай <u>без</u> сахара. Он всегда <u>без</u> денег.
ВДОЛЬ	along	Мы долго шли <u>вдоль</u> реки́.
ВМЕСТО	1) instead of 2) in place of	1) <u>Вместо</u> письма он послал телеграмму. 2) Он пошел туда <u>вместо</u> меня.
ВНЕ	1) outside of [location] 2) out of [a certain state or condition]	1) Он долго жил <u>вне</u> России. He lived <u>outside of</u> Russia for a long time. 2) Жизнь больного <u>вне</u> опасности. The patient is <u>out of</u> danger.
ВНУТРИ́	inside of [location]	Мы не знаем, что происходит <u>внутри́</u> этой страны. We don't know what is going on <u>inside</u> that country.
ВОКРУГ	around	Кто-то всю ночь ходил <u>вокруг</u> дома. <u>Вокруг</u> стола стояли стулья.
ВО ВРЕМЯ	during	Он всегда разговаривает <u>во время</u> урока.

Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Genitive Case

PREPOSITION	MEANING(S) OF PREPOSITION	EXAMPLE OF USAGE
ДЛЯ	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) for the benefit of 2) for the purpose of; for the sake of 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Я это сделал <u>для</u> своего отца. 2) Это вам необходимо <u>для</u> здоровья.
ДО	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) until (time) 2) before (time) 3) up to; as far as (place) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Я буду здесь <u>до</u> трёх часов. 2) <u>До</u> войны мы жили в Киеве. 3) Мы доехали <u>до</u> почты и повернули налево.
ИЗ	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) from (a place) 2) from (a source or origin) 3) out of 4) of (denoting a part of a larger group) 5) of (denoting material) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Он приехал сюда <u>из</u> Москвы. 2) Он <u>из</u> Ленинграда. 3) Он пьёт пиво <u>из</u> бутылки. 4) Некоторые <u>из</u> его студентов хорошо говорят по-русски. 5) Этот стол сделан <u>из</u> дерева.
ИЗ-ЗА	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) from behind 2) because of; due to 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) <u>Из-за</u> угла вышел человек. 2) Я опаздал <u>из-за</u> Ивана.
ИЗ-ПОД	out from under; from underneath; from beneath	<u>Из-под</u> стола вышла собака.
КРОМЕ	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) besides (in addition to) 2) except (excluding) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) <u>Кроме</u> рассказов, он писал статьи. 2) Все были там <u>кроме</u> Бориса.
МИМО	past; by (a place)	Он прошёл <u>мимо</u> меня и не заметил меня.

Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Genitive Case

PREPOSITION	MEANINGS	EXAMPLES
НАСЧЁТ	about, regarding, concerning, as far as [abstract], as for	<p><u>Насчёт</u> его опыта я ничего не могу сказать.</p> <p><u>As for</u> his experience, I can't tell you anything.</p> <p>Как <u>насчёт</u> поездки на озеро?</p> <p>How <u>about</u> a trip to the lake?</p>
ОТНОСИТЕЛЬНО	concerning, about, as for [synonym for <u>насчёт</u>]	<p>Он ничего не сказал <u>относительно</u> этого плана.</p> <p>He didn't say anything <u>about</u> that plan.</p>
ОКОЛО	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) near; close to (a place) 2) about, around (approximation) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Я живу <u>около</u> нашей школы. 2) Там было <u>около</u> пятидесяти человек. <p>Я приеду <u>около</u> трёх часов.</p>
ОТ	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) from (a person's house, office etc.) 2) away from (an object) 3) from (+ <u>ДО</u> from one place to another) 4) from, due to (indirectly cause) 5) against, for (denoting a cure or protection against) 6) to, for (denoting use or purpose) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Я только что пришёл <u>от</u> врача́. 2) Отойдите <u>от</u> окна! 3) <u>От</u> моего дома <u>до</u> школы около 5-и километров. 4) Он закричал <u>от</u> боли. 5) Ему дали лекарство <u>от</u> боли. <p>Армия защищает страну́ <u>от</u> противника.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6) Это ключ <u>от</u> машины.
ПОСЛЕ	after	Я приду к тебе <u>после</u> урока.

Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Genitive Case

PREPOSITION	MEANING(S) OF PREPOSITION	EXAMPLE OF USAGE
ПРОТИВ (НАПРО́ТИВ)	1) opposite (across from a place) 2) opposed to; against	1) Ресторан находится <u>напроти́в</u> театра. 2) Я ничего не имею <u>проти́в</u> . Он шёл <u>проти́в</u> ветра.
РАДИ	for the sake of	Он это делает <u>ради</u> детей. Он всё может сделать <u>ради</u> денег.
С	1) from (a place) (See chart on next page) 2) down from (a place) 3) since (time) 4) from (+ <u>ДО</u> - from a certain time until another time) 5) with (permission, approval) 6) beginning with; starting on	1) Мы сейчас идём <u>с</u> концерта. 2) Убери всё <u>со</u> стола. Он сошёл <u>с</u> горы. 3) Мы здесь <u>с</u> 31-го декабря. 4) Я работаю <u>с</u> 8-и <u>до</u> 5-и. Он занимается <u>с</u> утра <u>до</u> вечера. 5) <u>С</u> вашего разрешения, я поеду домой. 6) <u>С</u> понедельника я буду работать у него.
СРЕДИ	among; in the midst of	<u>Среди</u> моих друзей много врачей. Я не заметил его <u>среди</u> других студентов.
У	1) at a person's home (office, etc.) (See chart on next page) 2) by; at; near (a place) 3) "to have" (possession) 4) from	1) Таня сейчас у врача. Я буду <u>у</u> него в три часа. 2) Учитель стоит <u>у</u> доски.. 3) <u>У</u> тебя есть карандаш? 4) Я занял <u>у</u> него 5 рублей. Он попросил <u>у</u> меня 5 рублей.

Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Genitive Case

Common expressions followed by the Genitive Case

EXPRESSION	MEANING(S)	EXAMPLES
в зави́сности от	depending on; according to	Поступайте <u>в зави́сности от</u> обстановки. Act <u>according to</u> the situation.
в отлѝчие от	as opposed to; unlike; in contrast to	<u>В отлѝчие от</u> тебя, он хорошо учится. <u>Unlike</u> you he's a good student.
в течѝние	during, in the course of	Это нужно сделать <u>в течѝние</u> этой недели. This has to be done <u>during</u> this week.
за исклю́чением	except for; with the exception of	Все пришли, <u>за исклю́чением</u> вашего отца. Everyone came <u>except</u> your father.
что каса́ется	as for, concerning; regarding; as regards	<u>Что каса́ется</u> его перевода, то я им недоволен. <u>As for</u> his work, I'm not satisfied with it.

2. Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Dative Case

PREPOSITION	MEANING(S)	EXAMPLE OF USAGE
БЛАГОДАРЯ́	thanks to; owing to, due to	<u>Благодаря́</u> его помощи я успел это сделать вовремя. <u>Thanks to</u> his help I managed to get that done on time.
ВОПРЕКÍ	contrary to, in spite of, regardless of	<u>Вопреки́</u> совету врача, он продолжает курить. <u>Contrary to</u> his doctor's advice, he still smokes.
К	1) to (a person's place) 2) approaching, toward, up to 3) by (a certain time)	1) Я иду <u>к</u> врачу. I'm going to the doctor's. 2) Он подошёл <u>к</u> доске и начал писать. He walked <u>up to</u> the blackboard and <u>began</u> writing. 3) Я кончу перевод <u>к</u> пятнице. I'll finish the translation <u>by</u> Friday.

Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Dative Case

PREPOSITION	MEANING (S)	EXAMPLE OF USAGE
ПО ¹	<p>1) along (the surface of)</p> <p>2) on (days of the week; habitual)</p> <p>3) around (indefinite motion)</p> <p>4) due to; out of; because of</p> <p>5) by, via, through</p> <p>6) according to, in accordance with; by</p>	<p>1) Человек шёл <u>по</u> улице. The man was walking <u>along</u> the street.</p> <p>2) Я хожу в библиотеку <u>по</u> вторникам. I go to the library <u>on</u> Tuesday (<u>every</u> Tuesday).</p> <p>3) Вчера мы весь день ездили <u>по</u> городу. We drove <u>around</u> town all day yesterday.</p> <p>4) Я это сделал <u>по</u> глупости. I did that <u>out of</u> (<u>due to</u>) stupidity.</p> <p>5) Об этом мне сообщили <u>по</u> телефону. They informed me of this <u>by</u> phone.</p> <p>6) Всё идёт <u>по</u> плану. Everything is going <u>according to</u> plan (<u>as planned</u>).</p>
СОГЛАСНО	according to; in accordance with	<p>Всё было сделано <u>согласно</u> инструкциям директора. Everything was done <u>in accordance with</u> the director's instructions.</p>

1. ПО + DATIVE has many meanings and only the most frequent are presented in this lesson. It is also used with the accusative and prepositional cases with different meanings. These will be presented in later lessons.

3. Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Accusative Case

The following table illustrates the various uses of prepositions with the accusative case.

Preposition	Meaning	Example
В	1. at (a certain time)	1. Я приеду <u>в</u> два часа. I'll arrive <u>at</u> 2:00.
	2. on (a day of the week)	2. Он уехал <u>в</u> пятницу. He left <u>on</u> Friday.
	3. per ¹ (unit of time)	3. Мы ехали со скоростью 100 километров <u>в</u> час. We were travelling at 100 kilometers <u>per</u> hour.
	4. to (a place)	4. Я хожу <u>в</u> военную школу. I go <u>to</u> a military school.
ЗА	1. behind (motion)	1. Собака побежала <u>за</u> дом. The dog ran <u>behind</u> the house.
	2. for (opposite of "against"); on (someone's) side.	2. Я буду голосовать <u>за</u> него. I'll vote <u>for</u> him.
	3. for ("in exchange for")	3. Сколько ты заплатил <u>за</u> эту книгу? How much did you pay <u>for</u> this book?
	4. for ("in compensation for")	4. Он получил премию <u>за</u> хорошую работу. He got an award <u>for</u> the good job he did.

¹ Note that English often uses "a" or "an" rather than "per". In Russian the construction в + Acc. must be used: Он туда ездит 2 раза в неделю. - He goes there twice a week.

Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Accusative Case

Preposition	Meaning	Example
ЗА	5. for (in place of)	5. Сделай это <u>за</u> меня, пожалуйста. Do that <u>for</u> me, please. (= in my place)
	6. (за...до...) denotes the amount of time by which one event precedes another.	6. Он мне это сказал <u>за</u> 10 минут <u>до</u> начала урока. He told me that 10 minutes <u>before</u> the beginning of the class.
	7. in a certain amount of time; "within"	7. Эту работу он сделал <u>за</u> час. He got that job done <u>in</u> an hour. (= in an hour's time)
НА	1. on; onto (direction)	1. Положите газету <u>на</u> стол. Put the newspaper <u>on</u> the table.
	2. to (motion)	2. Ваня ездит <u>на</u> почту каждый день. Vanya goes <u>to</u> the post office every day.
	3. for (a period of time)	3. Я еду в Европу <u>на</u> неделю. I'm going to Europe <u>for</u> a week.
	4. for (= для), on	4. <u>На</u> подготовку войск ушло два месяца. Two months were spent <u>on</u> training the troops.
	5. by ² (indicating the difference between objects in a comparison.)	5. Он старше меня <u>на</u> 3 года. He is older than I am <u>by</u> 3 years.

² In English, we often omit the word "by" when indicating differences of amount or degree. In Russian на + Acc. is mandatory: He is 3 years older than I. - Он старше меня на 3 года.

Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Accusative Case

Preposition	Meaning	Example
ПО	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. through (up to and including a certain time) 2. each (indicating distribution of objects) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Он был в отпуске с 10-го <u>по</u> 20-ое мая. He was on leave from the 10th <u>through</u> the 20th of May. 2. Дайте всем <u>по</u> две книги. Give everyone two books <u>each</u>.
ПОД	under (motion)	Я поставил портфель <u>под</u> стол. I put the briefcase <u>under</u> the table.
ПРО	about; concerning	Он всё рассказал <u>про</u> свою тётю. He told all <u>about</u> his aunt.
СКВОЗЬ	through (modifies an object through which something passes or forces its way.)	Вода протекла <u>сквозь</u> потолок. The water leaked <u>through</u> the ceiling.
ЧЕРЕЗ	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. across (motion) 2. through (motion) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Танки уже перешли <u>через</u> мост. The tanks have already moved <u>across</u> the bridge. 2. Бойцы 2-го отделения прошли <u>через</u> лес. The members of the 2nd squad moved <u>through</u> the woods.

Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Accusative Case

ЧЕРЕЗ	3. in ³ (a certain period of time)	3. Я зайду к вам <u>через</u> час. I'll stop by to see you <u>in</u> an hour.
	4. through (via- in traveling)	4. Мы ездили в Киев <u>через</u> Москву. We traveled to Kiev <u>via</u> (through) Moscow.
	5. through (by means of) a person; using.	5. Переговоры вели <u>через</u> переводчика. The negotiations were conducted <u>through</u> an interpreter.
	6. (через... после...) denotes the amount of time by which one event follows another)	6. Он пришёл <u>через</u> 15 минут <u>после</u> того, как ты ушёл. He arrived 15 minutes <u>after</u> you left.

³ NOTE: In rendering "in" (a certain amount of time), it is important to differentiate between за and через:
Я это сделаю через час. - I'll do that in an hour. (= an hour from now.)
Я это сделаю за час. - I'll do that in an hour. (= in a one-hour time span.)

Reference Chart summarizing Location, Motion To and Motion From

The following chart summarizes location, motion to and motion from.

	<u>LOCATION</u> ГДЕ	<u>MOTION TO</u> КУДА	<u>MOTION FROM</u> ОТКУДА
INANIMATE NOUNS	в + Locative Я был <u>в банке.</u>	в + Accusative Я иду <u>в банк.</u>	из + Genitive Я иду <u>из банка.</u>
	на + Locative Я был <u>на вокзале.</u>	на + Accusative Я иду <u>на вокзал.</u>	с + Genitive Я иду <u>с вокзала.</u>
ANIMATE NOUNS	у + Genitive Я был <u>у доктора.</u>	к + Dative Я иду <u>к доктору.</u>	от + Genitive Я иду <u>от доктор.</u>

4. Prepositions governing the Instrumental Case

PREPO-SITION	MEANING(S)	EXAMPLE OF USAGE
ЗА ²	<p>1) behind; beyond (location)</p> <p>2) (going) after (something), (going) for (something)</p>	<p>1) Наша деревня находится <u>за</u> рекой. Our village is <u>beyond</u> the river.</p> <p>2) Я поеду в город <u>за</u> бензи́ном. I'm going into town <u>for</u> gasoline.</p>
МЕЖДУ	<p>between, among (time and location)</p>	<p>Он сидит <u>между</u> капитаном и сержантом. He is sitting <u>between</u> the captain and the sergeant.</p> <p>Я буду дома <u>между</u> двумя и пятью. I'll be home <u>between</u> 2:00 and 5:00;</p>
НАД	<p>1) over, above, (location)</p> <p>2) (to work) on</p>	<p>1) Наша квартира <u>над</u> магазином. Our apartment is <u>above</u> a store.</p> <p>2) Он работает <u>над</u> переводом. He's working <u>on</u> a translation.</p>

2. The prepositions ЗА and ПОД have other meanings when used with the accusative case. These will be discussed in a later lesson.

Prepositions governing the Instrumental Case

PREPO- SITION	MEANING(S)	EXAMPLE OF USAGE
ПЕРЕД	1) in front of (location) 2) right before (time)	1) <u>Перед</u> школой маленький сад. There is a little garden <u>in front of</u> the school. 2) Я зайду к тебе <u>перед</u> заседанием. I'll stop by to see you <u>right before</u> the meeting.
ПОД ³	under (location)	Книга лежит <u>под</u> столом. The book is <u>under</u> the table.
С ⁴	1) with, accompanied by 2) (a container) of	1) Я ходил в кино <u>с</u> Иваном. I went to the movies <u>with</u> Ivan. 2) На столе стояла бутылка <u>с</u> молоком. There was a bottle <u>of</u> milk on the table.

3. The prepositions ЗА and ПОД have other meanings when used with the accusative case. These will be discussed in a later lesson.

4. The preposition С is also used with the genitive and accusative cases in other meanings.

5. Reference Table of Prepositions governing the Prepositional/Locative Case

Preposition	Meaning(s)	Examples of Usage
В	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> in; at (a place) in (organization, group, etc.) in (a certain month of the year) in (a certain year) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Когда ты был <u>в</u> штабе? When were you <u>at</u> HQ? Он служит <u>в</u> армии уже 10 лет. He's been <u>in</u> the army for 10 years. Я начал там работать <u>в</u> мае. I began working there <u>in</u> May. Я туда ездил <u>в</u> 1968-ом году. I went there <u>in</u> 1968.
НА	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> in; at (a place) on (the surface of something) at (an event) by (a certain means of conveyance) at some time (during a certain week) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Он работает <u>на</u> почте. He works <u>at</u> the post office. Твои книги <u>на</u> столе. Your books are <u>on</u> the table. Вчера мы были <u>на</u> концерте. We were <u>at</u> a concert yesterday. Я езжу туда <u>на</u> автобусе. I go there <u>by</u> bus. Мы будем там <u>на</u> будущей неделе. We'll be there <u>next week</u>.
О	about; of, concerning	<p>Что ты думаешь <u>об</u> этом? What do you think <u>about</u> (of) that?</p> <p style="text-align: right;">(cont.)</p>

Prepositions governing the Prepositional/Locative Case

Preposition	Meanings(s)	Examples of Usage
ПО	after; upon (leaving, returning, etc.)	<p><u>По</u> приезде из Европы он сразу позвонил брату. He called his brother immediately <u>upon</u> his return from Europe.</p>
ПРИ	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. in the presence of (a person) 2. during the time of (a person); under (the reign of) 3. attached to (military) 4. at; located with 5. during 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Он это сделал <u>при</u> мне. He did that <u>in my presence</u>. 2. Это случилось еще <u>при</u> Хрущеве. That happened <u>during the time of</u> Khrushchev. 3. <u>При</u> мотострелковом батальоне есть минометная батарея. There's a mortar battery <u>attached to</u> the motorized rifle battalion. 4. <u>При</u> нашей школе есть библиотека. There's a library <u>at</u> our school. 5. Мы понесли большие потери <u>при</u> наступлении. <u>During</u> the attack we suffered heavy losses.

6. Summary of Russian Prepositions

CASE	PREPOSITIONS
GENITIVE	без, вдоль, вместо, вне, внутри, во время, вокруг, для, до, из, из-за, из-под, кроме, мимо, насчёт, около, от, относительно, после, против, ради, с*, среди, у
DATIVE	благодаря, вопреки, к, по*, согласно
ACCUSATIVE	в*, за*, на*, по*, под*, про, сквозь, через
INSTRUMENTAL	за*, между, над, перед, под*, с*
PREPOSITIONAL/ LOCATIVE	в*, на*, о, по*, при

* Multi-case prepositions

7. Summary of Multi-Case Prepositions

The following reference charts summarize the usages of several frequently-used Russian prepositions which are used with more than one case. Note the differences in meaning depending on the case usage.

Preposition	ACCUSATIVE CASE	PREPOSITIONAL/LOCATIVE CASE
в	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> GOAL OF MOTION Я иду <u>в штаб</u>. AT A CERTAIN TIME OF DAY Я приеду <u>в два часа</u>. ON A CERTAIN DAY OF THE WEEK Я приеду <u>в среду</u>. PER (EACH) Я езжу туда 3 раза <u>в неделю</u>. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> PLACE OF LOCATION Он сейчас <u>в штабе</u>. DURING A CERTAIN MONTH Я приеду <u>в июле</u>. DURING A CERTAIN YEAR Это было <u>в 1958-ом году</u>.
на	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> GOAL OF MOTION Я иду <u>на собрание</u>. TIME LIMIT (DURATION) Я еду туда <u>на неделю</u>. ALLOCATION (OF TIME MONEY, ETC.) <u>На эту работу</u> нужно 5 дней. DIFFERENCE IN COMPARISON Он старше меня <u>на три года</u>. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> PLACE OF LOCATION Он сейчас <u>на собрании</u>. SOMETIME DURING A CERTAIN WEEK Я поеду туда <u>на будущей неделе</u>. BY MEANS OF A CONVEYANCE Мы едем туда <u>на поезде</u>.

Summary of Multi-Case Prepositions

Preposition	ACCUSATIVE CASE	INSTRUMENTAL CASE
за	<p>1. MOTION (BEHIND, BEYOND) Он пошел <u>за</u> угол.</p> <p>2. A TIME DURING WHICH (SOMETHING WAS/WILL BE ACCOMPLISHED) Я сделаю эту работу <u>за час</u>.</p> <p>3. FOR (IN EXCHANGE/COMPENSATION FOR) Я заплатил <u>за</u> эту машину 5000 долларов.</p> <p>4. IN PLACE OF (ВМЕСТО) Сделай это <u>за</u> меня, пожалуйста!</p>	<p>1. LOCATION (BEHIND, BEYOND) Он живет <u>за</u> рекой.</p> <p>2. GOING <u>AFTER</u> SOMETHING (FETCHING) Поезжай в город <u>за</u> хлебом.</p>
под	<p>MOTION (UNDER; UNDERNEATH) Поставь чемодан <u>под</u> стол.</p>	<p>LOCATION (UNDER; UNDERNEATH) Чемодан стоял <u>под</u> столом.</p>

Preposition	DATIVE CASE	ACCUSATIVE CASE	PREPOSITIONAL/LOCATIVE CASE
по	<p>1. MOVEMENT ALONG A SURFACE Мы шли <u>по</u> очень узкой <u>улице</u>.</p> <p>2. REPEATED ACTION Мы ходим туда <u>по</u> <u>субботам</u>.</p> <p>3. DISTRIBUTING ITEMS TO SEVERAL PERSONS (ONE EACH) Нам дали <u>по</u> <u>рублю</u>.</p> <p>4. ACCORDING TO Все идёт <u>по</u> <u>плану</u>.</p>	<p>1. THROUGH (A CERTAIN TIME) Я был в отпуске с 15-го <u>по</u> <u>20-ое</u> сентября.</p> <p>2. DISTRIBUTING ITEMS (2 OR MORE ITEMS TO EACH PERSON) Каждому дали <u>по</u> <u>пять</u> <u>рублей</u>.</p>	<p>AFTER; UPON (COMPLETION, RETURNING, ETC.) <u>По</u> <u>окончании</u> университета он пошел в армию.</p>

Summary of Multi-Case Prepositions

Preposition	GENITIVE CASE	INSTRUMENTAL CASE
с	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. FROM (A PLACE) Он поздно пришел <u>с работы.</u> 2. SINCE (A CERTAIN TIME) Я работаю здесь <u>с марта</u> месяца. 	WITH (TOGETHER WITH) Я поеду туда <u>с товарищами.</u>

APPENDIX B. VERBS AND CASE GOVERNMENT

1. Verb using Prepositions Requiring the Genitive Case

The following verbs all require prepositions governing the genitive case when used in the meanings given below.

VERB + PREPOSITION	MEANING	EXAMPLE
зависеть + от	to depend on	Это зависит от вас.
<u>кричать</u> закричать + от	to scream from	Он закричал от боли.
<u>требовать</u> потребовать + от	to demand of to require of	Он требует от нас слишком много.
<u>просить</u> попросить + у	to ask of	Он просит у меня денег.
<u>спасать</u> спасти + от	to save from to rescue from	Он меня спас от тюрьмы.
<u>отказываться</u> отказаться + от	to refuse	Он отказался от моей помощи.
<u>умирать</u> умереть + от	to die from	Он умер от голода. (hunger)
<u>уставать</u> устать + от	to get tired of to become exhausted from	Он устал от работы.
<u>снимать</u> снять + с	to take down from to remove from	Его сняли с работы.
состоять + из	to consist of	Полк состоит из трёх батальонов.
<u>стрелять</u> выстрелить + из	to fire (weapon)	Он хорошо стреляет из пистолета.

Verbs using Prepositions requiring the Genitive Case

CONSTRUCTION	MEANING (S)	EXAMPLE (S)
исклю́чать/исключи́ть кого-нибудь из чего- нибудь	to expel (from); to exclude (from); to eliminate	Его <u>исключи́ли из</u> КПСС. He was <u>expelled from</u> the Communist Party.
красть/укра́сть что-нибудь у кого-нибудь	to steal	<u>У</u> меня <u>укра́ли</u> книгу. [They] stole my book.
освобо́ждать/освободи́ть кого-нибудь от чего- нибудь (also used reflexively)	to free; to liberate to let out of, to ex- empt (from)	Учитель <u>освободи́л</u> меня <u>от</u> уроков. The teacher <u>exempted</u> me from my lessons.
отлича́ться от чего-нибудь	to differ from	На бумаге советская конститу́ция мало <u>отлича́ется от</u> амери́кан- ской. On paper the Soviet Constitution <u>differs</u> little <u>from</u> the American Constitution.
отстава́ть/отста́ть от кого-нибудь	to lag behind, to fall behind	Ты очень <u>отста́л от</u> других студентов. You have <u>fallen</u> way <u>behind</u> the other students.
спуска́ться/спусти́ться с чего-нибудь	to descend, to come down from	Пилот <u>спусти́лся с</u> высоты 3 000 ме́тров. The pilot <u>descended from</u> an altitude of 3,000 meters.

2. Verbal Constructions with the Dative Case

VERB	PREPOSITION	MEANING	EXAMPLE
ГОТОВИТЬ (СЯ) / ПРИГОТОВИТЬ (СЯ)	К	to prepare (for), to get ready (for)	Студенты <u>готовятся к</u> экзамену. The students are <u>getting ready for</u> the test.
ОБРАЩАТЬСЯ / ОБРАТИТЬСЯ	К	to turn to, to appeal to	Она <u>обратилась ко</u> мне за помощью. She <u>appealed to</u> me for help.
ОТНОСИТЬСЯ	К	1) to concern, to have to do with; to apply to 2) to treat (a person); to relate to (a person)	1) Это <u>к</u> тебе не <u>относится</u> . That doesn't <u>concern</u> you. 2) Он <u>к</u> ней хорошо <u>относится</u> . He <u>treats</u> her well.
ПРИВЫКАТЬ / ПРИВЫКНУТЬ	К	to get used to	Я не могу <u>привыкнуть к</u> этому. I can't <u>get used to</u> that.
many GOING verbs with the prefix <u>ПОД-</u>	К	to move toward, to approach, to come up to	1) Мы сейчас <u>подъезжаем к</u> её дому. We're <u>approaching</u> her house now. 2) Колонна танков <u>подходит к</u> деревне. The column of tanks is <u>approaching</u> the village.

Verbal Constructions with the Dative Case

VERB	PREPO- SITION	MEANING	EXAMPLE
ПРИБЛИЖАТЬСЯ/ ПРИБЛИЗИТЬСЯ	К	to approach, to close in on	Мы сейчас <u>приближаемся к</u> Киеву. We <u>are approaching</u> Kiev now.
СТРЕМИТЬСЯ	К	to strive (for), to aspire (to)	Наша команда <u>стремится к</u> победе. Our team <u>is striving for</u> victory.

3. Verbal Constructions with the Accusative Case

Verbs Requiring the Preposition в + Acc.

Verb	Preposition	Meaning	Example
верить	в	to believe <u>in</u> (something)	Я <u>верю в</u> Бога. I <u>believe in</u> God.
<u>играть</u> поиграть	в	to play (a game)	Она хорошо <u>играет в</u> теннис. She <u>plays</u> tennis well.

Verbs Requiring the Preposition за + Acc.

Verb	Preposition	Meaning	Example
<u>голосовать</u> проголосовать	за	to vote for	Все <u>голосовали за</u> тебя. Everyone <u>voted for</u> you.
<u>платить</u> заплатить	за	to pay for	Сколько ты <u>заплатил за</u> твой дом? How much did you <u>pay for</u> your house?

Verbs Requiring the Preposition в + Acc.

Verb	Preposition	Meaning	Example
<u>вмешиваться</u> вмешаться	в	to inter- fere, to meddle in.	Не <u>вмешивайся в</u> мои дела! Don't <u>meddle in</u> my busi- ness.

Verbal Constructions with the Accusative Case

Verbs Requiring the Preposition на + Acc.

Verb	Preposition	Meaning	Example
<u>ВЛИЯТЬ</u> <u>ПОВЛИЯТЬ</u>	на	to influence, to have an effect on, to have an impact on.	Его предложение очень <u>по-</u> <u>влияло на</u> это решение. His suggestion greatly <u>influenced</u> that decision.
<u>ЖАЛОВАТЬСЯ</u> <u>ПОЖАЛОВАТЬСЯ</u>	на	to complain about	Почему ты всегда <u>жалуешься</u> <u>на</u> него. Why are you always <u>com-</u> <u>plaining about</u> him?
надеяться	на	to hope for, to count on	Мы <u>надеемся на</u> их помощь. We <u>are counting on</u> their help.
<u>СМОТРЕТЬ</u> ⁴ <u>ПОСМОТРЕТЬ</u>	на	to look at	<u>Посмотрите на</u> доску! <u>Look at</u> the board!

⁴ Note: The verb смотреть may be translated as "to watch".
In this case it does not require a preposition.

Example: Он весь вечер смотрел телевизор.
He watched television all night.

Я посмотрю этот фильм завтра.
I'll watch (see) this film tomorrow.

Verbal Constructions with the Accusative Case

Verb	Preposition	Meaning	Example
<u>вступать</u> <u>вступить</u>	в	to enter (into), to join (an organization)	Он <u>вступил в</u> партию в 1962-ом году. He <u>joined</u> the (Communist) Party in 1962.

Verbs Requiring the Preposition за + Acc.

<u>благодарить</u> <u>поблагодарить</u>	за	to thank (someone for something)	Он меня <u>поблагодарил за</u> помощь. He <u>thanked</u> me <u>for</u> helping him.
<u>наказывать</u> <u>наказать</u>	за	to punish (someone for something)	Его <u>наказали за</u> кражу машины. He <u>was punished for</u> stealing the car.

Verbs Requiring the Preposition на + Acc.

<u>делить</u> <u>разделить</u>	на	to divide into parts, groups	Он <u>разделил</u> студентов <u>на</u> две равные группы. He <u>divided</u> the students <u>into</u> two equal groups.
<u>нападать</u> <u>напасть</u>	на	to attack, to assault	<u>На нас</u> <u>напали</u> с юга. <u>We were attacked</u> from the South.
<u>сердиться</u> <u>рассердиться</u>	на	to be/get mad at	Она <u>на</u> меня <u>рассердилась</u> . She <u>got mad at</u> me.

4. Verbal Constructions with the Instrumental Case

VERB	PREPOSITION	MEANING(S)	EXAMPLE
ЗДОРОВАТЬСЯ/ ПОЗДОРОВАТЬСЯ	С	to greet, to say hello to	Почему ты со мной не <u>поздоровался</u> ? Why didn't you <u>say hello</u> to me?
ЗНАКОМИТЬСЯ/ ПОЗНАКОМИТЬСЯ	С	to meet, to make the ac- quaintance of	Я <u>познакомился с</u> ней в апреле. I <u>met her</u> in April.
ПОЗДРАВЛЯТЬ/ ПОЗДРАВИТЬ	С	to congrat- ulate some- one (on the occasion of)	<u>Поздравляю вас с успешным выполнением боевой задачи!</u> <u>Congratulations on the successful completion of your combat mission!</u>
ПРОЩАТЬСЯ/ ПОПРОЩАТЬСЯ	С	to say good- bye to, to bid farewell	Я сейчас иду <u>прощаться с</u> Ирой. I'm going to <u>say goodbye</u> <u>to</u> Ira now.
СМЕЯТЬСЯ/ ЗАСМЕЯТЬСЯ	НАД	to laugh at (someone or something)	<u>Над кем ты смеёшься?</u> Who are you <u>laughing at</u> ?
СОВЕТОВАТЬСЯ/ ПОСОВЕТОВАТЬСЯ	С	to consult, to ask (someone) for advice	<u>Посоветуйтесь с адвокатом!</u> Consult a lawyer.

Verbal Constructions with the Instrumental Case

VERB	PREPO-SITION	MEANING(S)	EXAMPLE
ВОЕВАТЬ	С	to be at war with, to fight with	В сороковых годах почти весь мир <u>воевал с</u> Германией. Almost the entire world was at war with Germany in the 1940's.
НАБЛЮДАТЬ	ЗА	to observe, to conduct observations (of), to watch; to track	<u>Наблюдаем за</u> воздушной целью в квадрате 0672. We are <u>tracking (watching)</u> an airborne target in sector 0672.
СОГЛАШАТЬСЯ/ СОГЛАСИТЬСЯ	С	to agree with	Я не могу <u>согласиться с</u> ними. I can't <u>agree with</u> them.
СЛЕДИТЬ	ЗА	to watch, to follow	Будьте осторожны! <u>За</u> вами следят. Be careful! You're being watched.

5. Verbal Constructions with the Prepositional/Locative Case

Verb	Preposition	Meaning	Example
нуждаться	в	to need; to require	Он <u>нуждается</u> в помощи. He <u>needs</u> help.
<u>отражаться</u> <u>отразиться</u>	на	to affect; to have an effect on	Курение плохо <u>отражается</u> на здоровье человека. Smoking <u>has a detrimental</u> <u>effect on</u> one's health.
<u>признаваться</u> <u>признаться</u>	в	to confess (to) to own up (to)	Он <u>признался</u> в этом преступлении. He <u>confessed to</u> that crime.
убеждать (ся) убедить (ся)	в	to convince (of) (to be/become convinced of)	Я <u>убедился</u> в правильности этого решения. I'm convinced of the cor- rectness of that decision.
упражняться	в	to practice	Тебе нужно больше <u>упраж-</u> <u>няться</u> в этом. You need to practice that some more.
жениться	на	to marry; to get married to (applies to men only)	Он <u>женился</u> на дочери товар- ища Павлова. He <u>married</u> comrade Pavlov's daughter.
<u>заботиться</u> <u>позаботиться</u>	о	to look after; to take care of	Он очень <u>заботится</u> о своей семье. He <u>takes</u> good <u>care of</u> his family

Verbal Constructions with the Prepositional/Locative Case

Verb	Preposition	Meaning	Example
<u>ОБВИНЯТЬ (СЯ)</u> <u>ОБВИНИТЬ (СЯ)</u>	В	to accuse (of) to charge (with) to be accused (of), to be charged (with)	Он <u>обвиняется в шпиона́же</u> . He <u>has been accused of being a spy</u> .
СОМНЕВАТЬСЯ	В	to doubt; to have doubts about	Я <u>в этом не сомневаюсь</u> . I <u>have no doubts about that</u> .

APPENDIX C. COMPLEX CONJUNCTIONS

1. The following chart summarizes the more common complex conjunctions consisting of prepositions used with the Genitive Case:

COMPLEX CONSTRUCTION	MEANING	EXAMPLE
без того, чтобы	without ...	Нельзя переходить границу <u>без того, чтобы</u> показать паспорт. One is not permitted to cross the border <u>without</u> showing one's passport.
вместо того, чтобы	instead of of ...	Вместо того, чтобы заниматься, он пошёл в клуб. <u>Instead</u> of studying, he went to the club.
для того, чтобы	(in order) to; so that; so as to ...	Он занял деньги <u>для того, чтобы</u> купить машину. He borrowed the money <u>to</u> buy a car.
до того, как	before ...	Он ушёл <u>до того, как</u> я пришёл. He left <u>before</u> I arrived.
из того, что	of (what); that ...	Я ничего не понял <u>из того, что</u> он сказал. I didn't understand anything <u>that</u> he said. (of what)
из-за того, что	due to; because; since ...	Все ушли <u>из-за того, что</u> начал идти дождь. Everyone had left <u>because</u> it started to rain.

Complex Conjunctions with the Genitive Case

COMPLEX CONSTRUCTION	MEANING	EXAMPLE
кроме того, что	except for; besides; in addition to ...	Я понял всё, <u>кроме того, что</u> мы прошли на 2-ом уроке. I understood everything <u>except</u> what we covered during the 2nd hour.
		<u>Кроме того, что</u> там было уже найдено, я нашёл ещё одно кольцо. <u>In addition to</u> what was already found there, I found one more ring.
насчёт того, чтобы (= относительно того, чтобы)	concerning; about; as far as ...	Что ты думаешь <u>насчёт того, чтобы</u> поехать в горы? What do you think <u>about</u> going to the mountains?
от того, что	from; because of	У него болит голова <u>от того, что</u> он много работает. He has a headache <u>because</u> he works a lot.
после того, как	after	Он пришёл <u>после того, как</u> все ушли. He came <u>after</u> everyone had left.
с тех пор, как	since	Я многому научился <u>с тех пор, как</u> приехал сюда. I've learned a lot <u>since</u> coming here.

2. The complex conjunctions below include prepositions used with the Dative and Instrumental Cases.

COMPLEX CONJUNCTION	MEANING	EXAMPLE
БЛАГОДАРЯ ТОМУ, ЧТО	due to ..., thanks to ... (<u>positive result</u>)	Я окончил университет только <u>благодаря тому, что</u> она мне помогала. I was only able to graduate <u>due to the fact that</u> she was helping me.
К ТОМУ, ЧТО	to ...	Я не могу привыкнуть <u>к тому, что</u> его больше не будет. I can't get used <u>to the fact that</u> he's not going to be around anymore.
ПЕРЕД ТЕМ, КАК	right before ..., just prior to ...	Он это сделал <u>перед тем, как</u> учитель вошёл в класс. He did this <u>right before</u> the teacher entered the classroom.
С ТЕМ, ЧТО	with ...	Я несогласен <u>с тем, что</u> ты говоришь. I don't agree <u>with what</u> you're saying.

3. The complex conjunctions below include prepositions used with the Accusative Case.

Complex Conjunction	Meaning(s)	Examples
ЗА ТО, ЧТО	1. for, in favor of 2. for, in compensation (or exchange for)	1. Я за <u>то, что</u> он предлагает. I am <u>in favor of</u> what he suggests. 2. Его наградили <u>за то, что</u> он спас своего командира. He was commended <u>for</u> rescuing his commander.
ЗА ТО, ЧТОБЫ	in favor of doing something; for	Я за <u>то, чтобы</u> идти всем вместе. I'm <u>for</u> going there all together.
НА ТО, ЧТО	to; of (translation depends on usage)	Как он реагировал <u>на то, что</u> ты предложил? How did he react <u>to</u> your proposal?
НЕСМОТРЯ НА ТО, ЧТО	despite; although; even though	<u>Несмотря на то, что</u> он плохой студент, он всё-таки кончил курс. <u>Even though</u> he is a poor student, he still managed to graduate.

4. The complex conjunctions below include prepositions used with the Prepositional/Locative Case.

COMPLEX CONJUNCTION	MEANING(S)	EXAMPLES
В ТОМ, ЧТО	that; in(to) the fact that; to (translation depends on context)	Он признался <u>в том, что</u> украл машину. He <u>admitted(to)</u> stealing the car.
НА ТОМ, ЧТО	with; by; at; where (translation depends on context)	Давайте остановимся <u>на том, что мы решили вчера</u> . <u>Let's stop where we decided yesterday.</u>
О ТОМ, ЧТО	about, concerning	Давайте поговорим <u>о том, что</u> будет на экзамене. Let's talk <u>about what's</u> going to be on the test.

